

# Stilfontein Main Transmission Substation and associated Grid Infrastructure Basic Assessment Report

Stilfontein Solar PV Cluster, Stilfontein, North West Province, South Africa  
South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power Developments (Pty) Ltd

SRK Reference Number: 581877/ Project 19  
DFFE Reference Number: TBC



# Stilfontein Main Transmission Substation and associated Grid Infrastructure Basic Assessment Report

Stilfontein Solar PV Cluster, Stilfontein, North West Province, South Africa

## Prepared for:

South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power  
Developments (Pty) Ltd  
4<sup>th</sup> floor Mariendahl House, Newlands on Main  
Claremont, Cape Town, 7708  
South Africa



+27 21 657 8061  
www.mainstreamrp.com

## Prepared by:

SRK Consulting (South Africa) (Pty) Ltd.  
183 Main Road, Administrative Building, Albion  
Springs  
Rondebosch  
Cape Town, WC, South Africa, 7700



PostNet Suite 206, Private Bag X18  
Rondebosch  
Cape Town, WC, South Africa, 7701

+27 21 659 3060  
www.srk.com



Reg. No. 1995.012890.07

**Lead Author:** Sue Reuther, Partner REUT

**Reviewer:** Chris Dalglish, Partner DALC

**Contributors** Kate Steyn, Principal, Kelly Armstrong, Consultant STEY, ARMK

## File Name:

581877\_Stilfontein\_MASTER BAR\_FINAL\_2023\_03\_06

## Suggested Citation:

SRK Consulting (South Africa) (Pty) Ltd. 2023. Stilfontein Main Transmission Substation and associated Grid Infrastructure

Basic Assessment Report. Prepared for South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power Developments (Pty) Ltd: Claremont, Cape Town. Project number: 581877.

Issued October 2023.

**Copyright © 2023**

SRK Consulting (South Africa) (Pty) Ltd. ■ 581877 ■ October 2023



## Disclaimer

SRK Consulting (South Africa) (Pty) Ltd. has prepared this document for South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power Developments (Pty) Ltd, our client. Any use or decisions by which a third party makes use of this document are the responsibility of such third parties. In no circumstance does SRK accept any consequential liability arising from commercial decisions or actions resulting from the use of this report by a third party.

The opinions expressed in this document have been based on the information available to SRK at the time of preparation. SRK has exercised all due care in reviewing information supplied by others for use on this project. While SRK has compared key supplied data with expected values, the accuracy of the results and conclusions from the review are entirely reliant on the accuracy and completeness of the supplied data. SRK does not accept responsibility for any errors or omissions in the supplied information, except to the extent that SRK was hired to verify the data.

# Contents

Acronyms and Abbreviations .....	xi
Glossary .....	xiv
1 Introduction .....	1
1.1 Background .....	1
1.2 Purpose of the Report .....	1
1.3 Structure of this Report.....	1
1.4 Content of the Report .....	1
1.5 Assumptions and Limitations.....	4
2 Governance Framework and Environmental Process.....	5
2.1 Legal Requirements .....	5
2.1.1 National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 .....	5
2.1.2 National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004.....	11
2.1.3 National Water Act 36 of 1998.....	12
2.1.4 National Heritage Resources Act 25 of 1999.....	13
2.2 Planning Policy Framework .....	14
2.2.1 Integrated Resource Plan for Electricity 2010 – 2030 .....	14
2.2.2 Strategic Integrated Projects.....	15
2.2.3 Renewable Energy Strategy for North West Province (2012) .....	16
2.2.4 North West Provincial Development Plan (2015) .....	16
2.2.5 North West Biodiversity Sector Plan (2015).....	16
2.2.6 Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (2017) .....	18
2.2.7 JB Marks Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (2017) .....	18
2.3 Environmental Process.....	19
2.3.1 Submission of Applications .....	20
2.3.2 BA Process and Phasing .....	20
3 Project Description .....	22
3.1 Stilfontein PV Cluster Overview .....	22
3.1.1 PV Facilities .....	22
3.1.2 Grid Connection Infrastructure.....	23
3.2 Description of the Project Area.....	23
3.3 Proponent’s Project Motivation.....	24
3.3.1 Motivation for Renewable Energy Generation in South Africa.....	24
3.3.2 Motivation for the Stilfontein Cluster projects.....	28
3.4 Project Alternatives.....	31
3.4.1 Location Alternatives.....	31
3.4.2 Activity Alternatives .....	31
3.4.3 The No-Go Alternative .....	31
3.5 MTS Infrastructure and Construction .....	33
3.5.1 Project Location .....	34
3.5.2 MTS.....	35
3.5.3 Transmission Lines .....	36
3.5.4 Access Roads .....	37
3.5.5 Ancillary Support Facilities .....	38
3.5.6 Ground Preparation and Installation .....	38
3.5.7 Stormwater Management.....	38
3.5.8 Water Use and Supply .....	39
3.5.9 Waste and Wastewater Management.....	39
3.5.10 Maintenance.....	40
3.5.11 Stormwater Management.....	40
3.5.12 Water Use and Supply .....	40
3.5.13 Waste Management .....	40

3.5.14	Project Lifetime .....	41
3.6	Decommissioning .....	41
4	Description of the Affected Environment .....	43
4.1	Biophysical Environment .....	43
4.1.1	Geology and Topography .....	43
4.1.2	Climate .....	46
4.1.3	Soils and Land Capability .....	46
4.1.4	Wetlands .....	47
4.1.5	Terrestrial Ecology .....	50
4.2	Socio-Economic Environment .....	59
4.2.1	Regional Context.....	59
4.2.2	Demographics .....	59
4.2.3	Social Characteristics.....	59
4.2.4	Local Economy.....	60
4.2.5	Education .....	61
4.2.6	Health.....	61
4.3	Historical and Cultural Environment .....	62
4.3.1	Palaeontology, Archaeology and Historical Record.....	62
4.3.2	Cultural Landscape .....	65
4.4	Visual and Aesthetic Environment.....	65
4.4.1	Visual Character.....	65
4.4.2	Visual Quality .....	67
4.4.3	Sense of Place .....	67
4.4.4	Visual Receptors .....	67
4.4.5	Viewing Distance and Visibility .....	67
4.5	Regional Renewable Energy Sector .....	68
5	Stakeholder Engagement.....	72
5.1	Objectives and Approach to Stakeholder Engagement .....	72
5.2	Stakeholder Engagement during the Basic Assessment Process .....	72
5.2.1	Identification of Key Stakeholders and IAPs .....	73
5.2.2	Newspaper Advertisements, Site Notices and Letter Drops.....	73
5.2.3	Comments Received During the Pre-Application Phase .....	74
5.2.4	Notification of BAR for Public Comment .....	75
5.2.5	Next Steps.....	75
6	Environmental Impact Assessment .....	76
6.1	Introduction .....	76
6.1.1	Environmental Impacts Identified.....	76
6.1.2	Specialist Studies Undertaken .....	76
6.1.3	Alternatives Assessed in the EIA .....	77
6.1.4	Impact Rating Methodology .....	77
6.2	Potential Soil and Land Capability Impacts .....	79
6.2.1	Introduction .....	79
6.2.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	80
6.2.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	80
6.2.4	Specialist Opinion .....	81
6.2.5	The No-Go Alternative .....	81
6.3	Potential Freshwater Impacts .....	81
6.3.1	Introduction .....	81
6.3.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	82
6.3.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	83
6.3.4	Specialist Opinion .....	84
6.3.5	The No-Go Alternative .....	84
6.4	Potential Terrestrial Ecology Impacts.....	84
6.4.1	Introduction .....	84

6.4.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	85
6.4.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	88
6.4.4	Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase .....	89
6.4.5	Specialist Opinion .....	90
6.4.6	No-Go Alternative.....	91
6.5	Potential Avifauna Impacts .....	91
6.5.1	Introduction .....	91
6.5.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	91
6.5.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	93
6.5.4	Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase .....	94
6.5.5	Specialist Opinion .....	95
6.5.6	The No-Go Alternative .....	95
6.6	Potential Socio-Economic Impacts.....	95
6.6.1	Introduction .....	95
6.6.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	96
6.6.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	98
6.6.4	Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase .....	98
6.6.5	Specialist Opinion .....	98
6.6.6	The No-Go Alternative .....	98
6.7	Potential Heritage and Palaeontology Impacts .....	98
6.7.1	Introduction .....	98
6.7.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	99
6.7.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	100
6.7.4	Specialist Opinion .....	100
6.7.5	The No-Go Alternative .....	100
6.8	Potential Visual Impacts .....	100
6.8.1	Introduction .....	100
6.8.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	101
6.8.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	101
6.8.4	Specialist Opinion .....	103
6.8.5	The No-Go Alternative .....	103
6.9	Potential Traffic Impacts .....	103
6.9.1	Introduction .....	103
6.9.2	Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase .....	103
6.9.3	Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase .....	107
6.9.4	Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase .....	107
6.9.5	Opinion.....	108
6.9.6	The No-Go Alternative .....	108
6.10	Potential Cumulative Impacts.....	108
6.10.1	Introduction .....	108
6.10.2	Methodology.....	108
6.10.3	Cumulative Impact Assessment.....	109
7	Conclusions and Recommendations.....	119
7.1	Environmental Impact Statement .....	119
7.1.1	Evaluation and Summary of Positive and Negative Impacts .....	119
7.1.2	Integrated Project and Sensitivity Map .....	129
7.1.3	Principal Findings.....	132
7.2	Analysis of Need and Desirability of the Project.....	133
7.2.1	Alignment with Policy and Planning Documentation.....	133
7.2.2	Socio-Economic Need and Desirability.....	134
7.2.3	Ecological Need and Desirability .....	135
7.2.4	Summary of Need and Desirability .....	136
7.3	Recommendations.....	136
7.4	Conclusion and Authorisation Opinion .....	139
7.5	Way Forward .....	139

8    References .....141

## Tables

Table 1-1:	Content of BAR as per Appendix 1 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 .....	2
Table 2-1:	NEMA listed activities (2014) applicable to the proposed project .....	7
Table 2-2:	Applications for authorisation .....	20
Table 3-1:	Alternatives considered .....	31
Table 3-2:	Overview of MTS key components .....	33
Table 3-3:	Property details of MTS .....	34
Table 3-4:	Coordinates for the MTS grid connection and associated infrastructure .....	35
Table 3-5:	Transmission line characteristics for the MTS grid connection .....	37
Table 4-1:	Specialist baseline studies undertaken for the BA .....	43
Table 4-2:	Herpetofauna species recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	54
Table 4-3:	Mammal species of conservation concern expected to occur in the Stilfontein Cluster .....	55
Table 4-4:	Avifauna priority species likely to occur in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	56
Table 4-5:	Population distribution (number and percentage) across the JB Marks LM, DKKDM and Province .....	59
Table 4-6:	Record of heritage observations in the cumulative Stilfontein Cluster area .....	64
Table 4-7:	Renewable energy projects under consideration in the project area .....	70
Table 5-1:	BA Process stakeholder engagement activities .....	72
Table 5-2:	Site notices and posters placed near Stilfontein Cluster .....	73
Table 5-3:	Letter drops near Stilfontein Cluster .....	74
Table 6-1:	Specialist studies proposed in the DFFE Screening Tool .....	76
Table 6-2:	Criteria used to determine the consequence of the impact .....	78
Table 6-3:	Method used to determine the consequence score .....	78
Table 6-4:	Probability classification .....	78
Table 6-5:	Impact significance ratings .....	79
Table 6-6:	Impact status and confidence classification .....	79
Table 6-7:	Significance of reduction and loss of land capability .....	80
Table 6-8:	Significance of reduction and loss of land capability .....	81
Table 6-9:	Assessment of significance of potential impacts on the wetland functionality associated with the construction phase of the MTS project .....	83
Table 6-10:	Assessment of significance of potential impacts on the wetland functionality associated with the operational phase of the MTS project .....	84
Table 6-11:	Significance of potential degradation and loss of habitat and protected species .....	85
Table 6-12:	Significance of potential degradation and loss of habitat and protected species .....	86
Table 6-13:	Significance of spread of alien and invasive species .....	87
Table 6-14:	Significance of displacement and loss of fauna .....	87
Table 6-15:	Significance of degradation and fragmentation of habitat .....	88
Table 6-16:	Significance of spread of alien and invasive species .....	88
Table 6-17:	Significance of displacement and loss of fauna .....	89
Table 6-18:	Significance of degradation and fragmentation of habitat .....	90
Table 6-19:	Significance of spread of alien and invasive species .....	90
Table 6-21:	Significance of potential bird displacement due to disturbance .....	92
Table 6-22:	Significance of potential bird displacement due to habitat transformation .....	92
Table 6-23:	Significance of potential bird mortality due to collisions with transmission lines .....	93
Table 6-24:	Significance of potential bird mortality due to electrocution in substation .....	94
Table 6-25:	Significance of potential displacement of birds due to disturbance .....	95
Table 6-26:	Significance of social disruption and change in social dynamics .....	97
Table 6-27:	Significance of reduced quality of life and increased risks due to construction near residences .....	97
Table 6-28:	Significance of potential loss of heritage / palaeontology resources .....	99
Table 6-29:	Significance of potential loss of fossils .....	100
Table 6-30:	Altered sense of place and visual intrusion caused by construction activities .....	101
Table 6-31:	Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by the Main Transmission Substation .....	102
Table 6-32:	Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by the Transmission lines .....	102
Table 6-33:	Altered visual quality caused by light pollution at night .....	103
Table 6-34:	Significance of potential trip generation during construction .....	106



Table 6-35: Significance of potential trip generation during decommissioning .....	107
Table 6-36: Significance of potential cumulative reduction and loss of land capability .....	111
Table 6-37: Cumulative loss of habitat due to Stilfontein Cluster.....	111
Table 6-38: Significance of potential cumulative habitat loss, fragmentation and degradation .....	112
Table 6-39: Significance of potential cumulative bird displacement due to habitat transformation .....	113
Table 6-40: Significance of potential cumulative stimulation of economic and employment growth .....	114
Table 6-41: Significance of potential cumulative increase in community prosperity if REIPPPP requirements apply .....	115
Table 6-42: Significance of potential cumulative increase in community prosperity if REIPPPP requirements do not apply .....	115
Table 6-43: Significance of potential cumulative loss of heritage resources and fossils .....	116
Table 6-44: Significance of potential cumulative altered sense of place and visual intrusion caused by facilities.....	117
Table 6-45: Cumulative Traffic Impacts.....	117
Table 6-46: Significance of potential cumulative trip generation .....	117
Table 7-1: Summary of potential impacts of the MTS .....	121
Table 7-2: Analysis of project consistency with relevant plans and policies .....	134

## Figures

Figure 1-1: Location of the Stilfontein Cluster .....	3
Figure 1-2: Location of the Stilfontein PV Cluster in relation to the Klerksdorp REDZ and the Central Strategic Transmission Corridor.....	4
Figure 1-3: Location of the MTS .....	5
Figure 2-1: Emerging long-term plan in 2019 IRP .....	15
Figure 2-2: Priority areas identified in the NWBSP for the project region .....	18
Figure 2-3: BA Process for projects located within a REDZ .....	21
Figure 3-1: Components included in individual BA processes for the Stilfontein Solar Cluster .....	22
Figure 3-2: View of the project area .....	24
Figure 3-3: History of loadshedding in South Africa .....	25
Figure 3-4: Electricity production in South Africa (TWh) .....	25
Figure 3-5: Renewable energy production in South Africa (TWh).....	26
Figure 3-6: Annual CO2 emissions from fuel combustion in South Africa (million tons / year) .....	27
Figure 3-7: Gross power generation by source in South Africa.....	28
Figure 3-8: Power sector emissions intensity and economy energy intensity in South Africa .....	28
Figure 3-9: Solar resource map for South Africa .....	30
Figure 3-10: North West substation and transformer capacity .....	30
Figure 3-11: Layout of MTS project .....	32
Figure 3-12: Schematic of a substation .....	36
Figure 3-13: Schematic of a wastewater treatment unit .....	41
Figure 4-1: Geology of the project area (yellow rectangle) .....	44
Figure 4-2: Project area topography .....	45
Figure 4-3: Slopes in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	45
Figure 4-4: Climatic characteristics of the project region .....	46
Figure 4-5: Average monthly precipitation (left) and temperature (right) in Stilfontein, 1910-2022 .....	46
Figure 4-6: Soil types in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	47
Figure 4-7: Ecosystem threat status of river and wetland ecosystems in the 500 m regulated area of the Stilfontein Cluster .....	48
Figure 4-8: Hydrogeomorphic units within the 500 m regulated area in the Stilfontein Cluster area .....	49
Figure 4-9: Depression wetland HGM 1, showing wetland centre (A) and wetland outskirts with hydrophytes (B) .....	49
Figure 4-10: Floodplain wetland HGM 2, showing downstream (left) and upstream (right) of the portion located within the 500 m of the Stilfontein Cluster .....	50
Figure 4-11: Habitat type of the project area: open woodland (top), degraded grassland (middle) and rocky outcrop (bottom) .....	51
Figure 4-12: Selected flora species recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	53
Figure 4-13: Camelthorn trees in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	53
Figure 4-14: Selected reptiles recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	54

Figure 4-15: Selected mammal species observed in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	55
Figure 4-16: White-backed vultures roosting on the 400kV Hermes – Pluto 2 transmission line .....	57
Figure 4-17: Location of White-backed Vulture roosts on the Hermes/Pluto 2 overhead line .....	58
Figure 4-18: Location of water reservoirs in the Stilfontein Cluster project area .....	58
Figure 4-19: Employment status (left) and sectors (right) in the JB Marks LM in 2011 .....	60
Figure 4-20: Economic structure of the JB Marks Municipality in 2017 .....	61
Figure 4-21: JB Marks LM, district and provincial education for 2016 .....	62
Figure 4-22: Location of heritage observations in the cumulative Stilfontein Cluster area .....	64
Figure 4-23: Photos of heritage observations in the cumulative Stilfontein Cluster area .....	66
Figure 4-24: Combined viewshed with viewpoints in the Stilfontein Cluster .....	68
Figure 4-25: Diab’s wind atlas (left) and Hagemann’s wind atlas (right) .....	69
Figure 4-26: Distribution of renewable energy production in South African (2020) .....	69
Figure 4-27: Renewable energy projects under consideration in the project area .....	71
Figure 6-1 Location of MTS with relation to the Stilfontein cluster project area as well as the delineated wetlands inside the cluster area .....	82
Figure 6-2: Site access .....	105
Figure 6-3: Recommended minimum access separations .....	105
Figure 6-4: Sight distances at Access 1 to the east (top) and west (bottom) .....	106
Figure 7-1: Integrated sensitivity map .....	130
Figure 7-2: Integrated sensitivity map: Stilfontein Cluster area .....	131
Figure 7-3: MTS Grid infrastructure layout – key infrastructure components .....	138

## Appendices

Appendix A	EAP Declaration
Appendix B	Curriculum Vitae of the EAP(s)
Appendix C	Stakeholder Engagement
Appendix C.1	Stakeholder Database
Appendix C.2	Site Notice and Proof of Placement
Appendix C.3	Newspaper Advert and Proof of Placement
Appendix C.4	Proof of Letter Drop
Appendix C.5	Notification Letter and Proof of Stakeholder Notification
Appendix C.6	Issues and Responses Summary
Appendix D	Specialist Studies
Appendix D.1	Freshwater Specialist Study
Appendix D.2	Terrestrial Ecology Specialist Study
Appendix D.3	Avifauna Specialist Study
Appendix D.4	Soil and Land Capability Specialist Study
Appendix D.5	Socio-Economic Specialist Study
Appendix D.6	Heritage Specialist Study
Appendix D.7	Visual Specialist Study
Appendix E	EMPrs
Appendix E.1	Generic EMPr for the Development and Expansion of Substation Infrastructure for Transmission and Distribution of Electricity
Appendix E.2	Generic EMPr for the Development and Expansion of Overhead Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure
Appendix F	Site Sensitivity Verification Report

## Acronyms and Abbreviations

AC	Alternating current
AoI	Area of Influence
BA	Basic Assessment
BAR	Basic Assessment Report
BESS	Battery Energy Storage System
BSP	Biodiversity Spatial Plan
CapEx	Capital expenditure
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
CIA	Cumulative Impact Assessment
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon Dioxide
CSI	Corporate Social Investment
DBAR	Draft Basic Assessment Report
DC	Direct current
DEA&DP	(Western Cape) Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
DFFE	(National) Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
DHSWS	(National) Department of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation
DKKDM	Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality
DMRE	Department of Mineral Resources and Energy
DNI	Direct natural (solar) irradiation
DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
ED	Enterprise Development
EHV	Extra High Voltage
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme
EN	Endangered
EPC	Engineering Procurement Contractor
ESA	Ecological Support Area
FEPA	Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Area
GA	General Authorisation
GDPR	Regional Gross Domestic Product
GHG	Greenhouse Gas
GN	Government Notice
GW	Gigawatt
ha	Hectares
HDI	Human Development Index

HGM	Hydrogeomorphic (Classification)
HIA	Heritage Impact Assessment
HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
IAPs	Interested and Affected Parties
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IEM	Integrated Environmental Management
IFC	International Finance Corporation
IPP	Independent Power Producer
IRP	Integrated Resource Plan
IUCN	International Union for Conservation of Nature
km	Kilometres
kV	Kilovolt
LC	Least Concern
LED	Local Economic Development
LM	Local Municipality
LN	Listing Notice
LSA	Later Stone Age
MERO	Municipal Economic Review and Outlook
MSA	Middle Stone Age
MTS	Main Transmission Station
MW	Megawatt
NBA	National Biodiversity Assessment
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 as amended
NEM:BA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004
NEM:PAA	National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003
NEM:WA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act 59 of 2008
NERSA	National Energy Regulator of South Africa
NFEPA	National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Area
NGO	Non-Governmental Organisation
NHRA	National Heritage Resources Act 25 of 1999
NT	Near threatened
NWA	National Water Act 36 of 1998
NWBSP	North West Biodiversity Sector Plan
OpEx	Operational expenditure
PES	Present Ecological State
POPIA	Protection of Personal Information Act 4 of 2013
PPA	Power Purchasing Agreement
PSDF	Provincial Special Development Framework
PV	Photovoltaic
RE	Remainder
REDZ	Renewable Energy Development Zone

REIPPPP	Renewable Energy Independent Power Producers Procurement Programme
RES	Renewable Energy Strategy
S&EIR	Scoping and Environmental Impact Reporting
SABAP	Southern African Bird Atlas Project
SAHRA	South African National Heritage Resources Agency
SAHRIS	South African Heritage Resources Information System
SANBI	South African National Biodiversity Institute
SCC	Species of Conservation Concern
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SED	Socio-economic Development
SG Code	Surveyor General Code
SIA	Socio-economic Impact Assessment
SIP	Strategic Integrated Projects
SoW	Scope of Work
SRK	SRK Consulting (South Africa) (Pty) Ltd
StatsSA	Statistics South Africa
STC	Strategic Transmission Corridor
ToR	Terms of Reference
VAC	Visual Absorption Capacity
VEC	Valued Environmental and Social Component
VEGMAP	Vegetation Map of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland
VIA	Visual Impact Assessment
VP	Viewpoint
VU	Vulnerable
WMA	Water Management Area
WUA	Water Use Authorisation
WUL	Water Use Licence

# Glossary

This list contains definitions of symbols, units, abbreviations, and terminology that may be unfamiliar to the reader.

Avifauna	The collective birds of a given region.
Baseline	Information gathered at the beginning of a study which describes the environment prior to development of a project and against which predicted changes (impacts) are measured.
Community	Those people who may be impacted upon by the construction and operation of the project. This includes neighbouring landowners, local communities and other occasional users of the area
Construction Phase	The stage of project development comprising site preparation as well as all construction activities associated with the development.
Consultation	A process for the exchange of views, concerns and proposals about a project through meaningful discussions and the open sharing of information.
Critical Biodiversity Area	Areas of the landscape that must be conserved in a natural or near-natural state in order for the continued existence and functioning of species and ecosystems and the delivery of ecosystem services.
Cumulative Impacts	Direct and indirect impacts that act together with current or future potential impacts of other activities or proposed activities in the area/region that affect the same resources and/or receptors.
Ecological Support Area	Areas which play an important role in supporting the ecological functioning of critical biodiversity areas and/or in delivering ecosystem services that support socio-economic development.
Ecology	The study of the interrelationships of organisms with and within their physical surroundings
Ecosystem	The interconnected assemblage of all living organisms that occupy a given area and the physical environment with which they interact.
Endemic / Endemism	Species unique (native or restricted) to a defined geographic location, i.e. ecological state of a species being unique to a defined geographic location.
Environment	The external circumstances, conditions and objects that affect the existence of an individual, organism or group. These circumstances include biophysical, social, economic, historical and cultural aspects.
Environmental Authorisation	Permission granted by the competent authority for the applicant to undertake listed activities in terms of the NEMA EIA Regulations, 2014.
Environmental Impact Assessment	A process of evaluating the environmental and socio-economic consequences of a proposed course of action or project.
Environmental Impact Assessment Report	The report produced to relay the information gathered and assessments undertaken during the Environmental Impact Assessment.
Environmental Management Programme	A description of the means (the environmental specification) to achieve environmental objectives and targets during all stages of a specific proposed activity.
Ephemeral	A water body that does not flow or contain water year-round, in response to seasonal rainfall and run-off.
Fauna	The collective animals of a particular region, habitat or geological period.
Flora	The collective plants of a particular region, habitat or geological period.
Geohydrology	The study of the character, source and mode of occurrence of groundwater
Heritage Resources	Refers to something tangible or intangible, e.g. a building, an area, a ritual, etc. that forms part of a community's cultural legacy or tradition and is passed down from preceding generations and has cultural significance.

Housekeeping	Maintaining the working environmental in a tidy manner.
Hydrology	(The study of) surface water flow.
Impact	A change to the existing environment, either adverse or beneficial, that is directly or indirectly due to the development of the project and its associated activities.
Independent EAP	An independent person with the appropriate qualifications and experience appointed by the Applicant to manage the Environmental Impact Assessment process on behalf of the Applicant.
Integrated Environmental Management	The practice of incorporating environmental management into all stages of a project's life cycle, namely planning, design, implementation, management and review.
Mitigation measures	Design or management measures that are intended to minimise or enhance an impact, depending on the desired effect. These measures are ideally incorporated into a design at an early stage.
Operational Phase	The stage of the works following the Construction Phase, during which the development will function or be used as anticipated in the Environmental Authorisation.
Red Data List	Species of plants and animals that because of their rarity and/or level of endemism are included on a Red Data List (usually compiled by the IUCN) which provides an indication of their threat of extinction and recommendations for their protection.
Resilient System	An ecosystem or habitat that resists damage and recovers quickly.
Scoping	A procedure to consult with stakeholders to determine issues and concerns and for determining the extent of and approach to an EIA and EMPr (one of the phases in an EIA and EMPr). This process results in the development of a scope of work for the EIA, EMPr and specialist studies.
Specialist study	A study into a particular aspect of the environment, undertaken by an expert in that discipline.
Stakeholders	All parties affected by and/or able to influence a project, often those in a position of authority and/or representing others.
Sustainable development	Sustainable development is generally defined as development that meets the needs of the present generation without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. NEMA defines sustainable development as the integration of social, economic and environmental factors into planning, implementation and decision-making so as to ensure that development serves present and future generations.

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Background

South Africa Mainstream Renewable Power Developments (Pty) Ltd (Mainstream) proposes to construct up to nine solar Photovoltaic (PV) facilities and associated infrastructure for the Stilfontein PV Cluster (see Section 3.1). The Stilfontein Cluster is located ~20 km south-west of Potchefstroom and ~6 km north-east of Stilfontein, in the City of Matlosana and JB Marks Local Municipalities, and Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality (DKKDM) in North West Province. The Stilfontein Cluster lies within the Klerksdorp Renewable Energy Development Zone (REDZ) (see Figure 1-1 and Figure 1-2).

The proposed project is intended to form part of a submission under the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producers Procurement Programme (REIPPPP). If bidding is unsuccessful and a private offtake opportunity arises, this may be pursued.

Although the project lies entirely within the Central Strategic Transmission Corridor (STC) (see Figure 1-2) and triggers Listing Notice (LN) 1 Activity 11 and Listing Notice (LN) 2 Activity 9 in the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, 2014 (as amended), two of the environmental themes identified in the national web based environmental screening tool are verified as being of high sensitivity, viz. avifauna and terrestrial biodiversity (see Section 2.1.1.2 **Error! Reference source not found.**). As such, the project is not excluded from the requirement to obtain Environmental Authorisation (EA) in terms of GN 2313 of 2022 (*Adoption of the Standard for Development and Expansion of Power Lines and Substations within Identified Geographical Areas and the Exclusion of this Infrastructure from the Requirement to Obtain an Environmental Authorisation*).

A Basic Assessment (BA) process in terms of the National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998, as amended (NEMA) and the EIA Regulations, 2014, as amended, is required to support an application for EA for the project(s). SRK Consulting (South Africa) (Pty) Ltd (SRK) was appointed by Mainstream to undertake the BA processes for each project in the Stilfontein PV Cluster.

Separate EAs are to be applied for the individual projects in the Stilfontein Cluster as well as the associated grid connections:

- 9 x PV facilities, including 11-33 kV transmission lines, each including Battery Energy Storage Systems (BESS), and 9 x Independent Power Producer (IPP)-side on-site substations (note that all nine of these applications have been approved);
- 9 x Eskom-side on-site substations and 132 kV grid lines to the Main Transmission Station (MTS); and
- 1 x MTS and 400 kV lines to existing 400kV Hermes Pluto 1 and 2 transmission lines.

**This BA Report (BAR) relates to the MTS and 400 kV transmission lines to existing 400kV Hermes - Pluto transmission lines 1 and 2** (see Figure 1-3).

## 1.2 Purpose of the Report

In terms of relevant legislation, the project may not commence prior to obtaining a suite of authorisations (see Section 2). This report has been compiled in support of these applications. The BAR documents the steps undertaken during the pre-application phase to assess the significance of impacts and determine measures to mitigate the negative impacts and enhance the benefits (or positive impacts) of the proposed project. The report presents the findings of the BA and a description of the public participation that forms part of the process.



The BAR is accompanied by an Environmental Management Programme (EMPr), which documents the management and monitoring measures that need to be implemented during the design, construction and operational phases of the project to ensure that impacts are appropriately mitigated and benefits enhanced.

More specifically, the objectives of this BAR are to:

- Inform the stakeholders about the proposed project and the BA process followed;
- Obtain contributions from stakeholders (including the applicant, consultants, relevant authorities and the public) and ensure that all issues, concerns and queries raised are fully documented and addressed;
- Assess in detail the potential environmental and socio-economic impacts of the project;
- Identify environmental and social mitigation measures to address the impacts assessed; and
- Produce a BAR that will assist the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) to decide whether (and under what conditions) to authorise the proposed development.

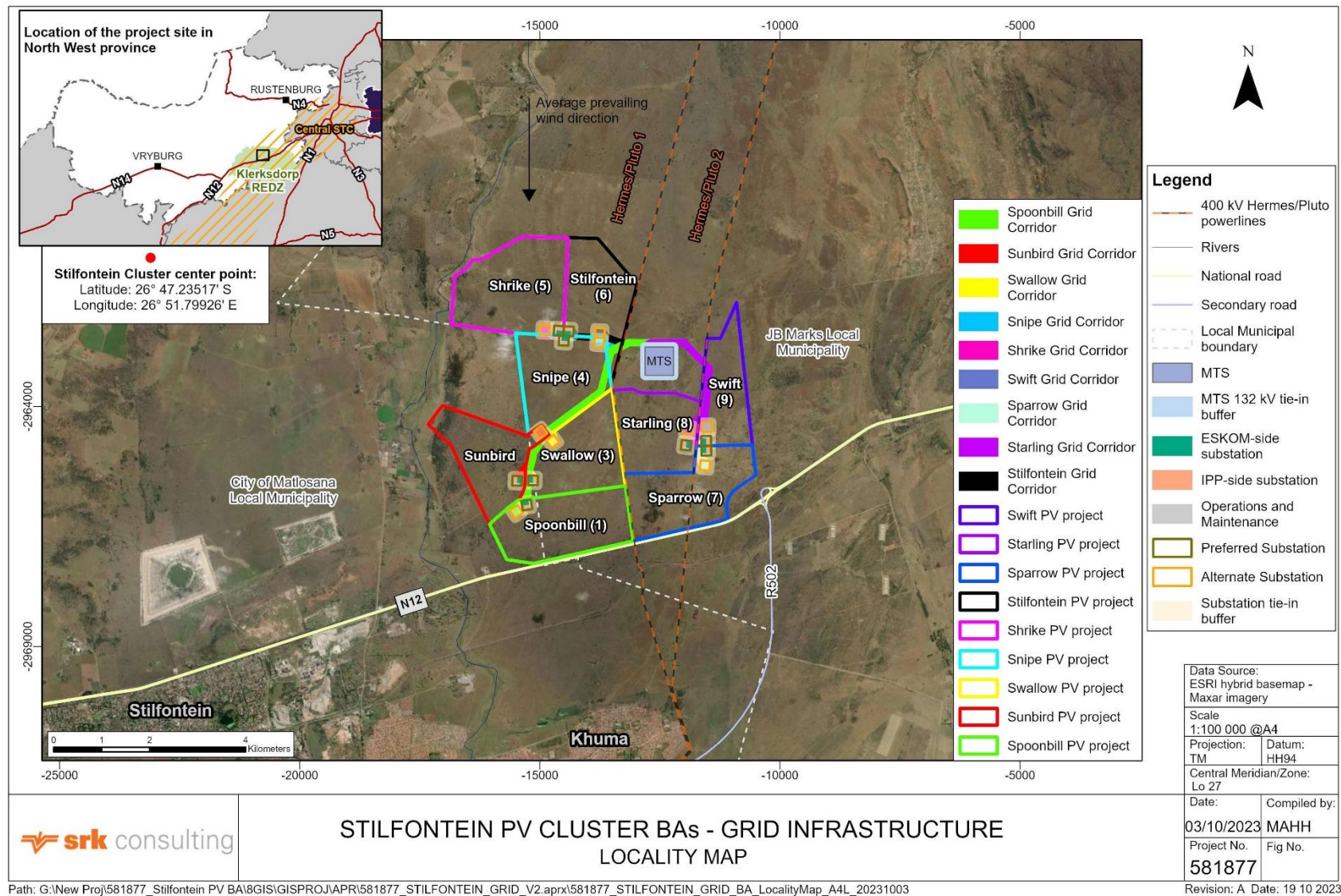


Figure 1-1: Location of the Stilfontein Cluster

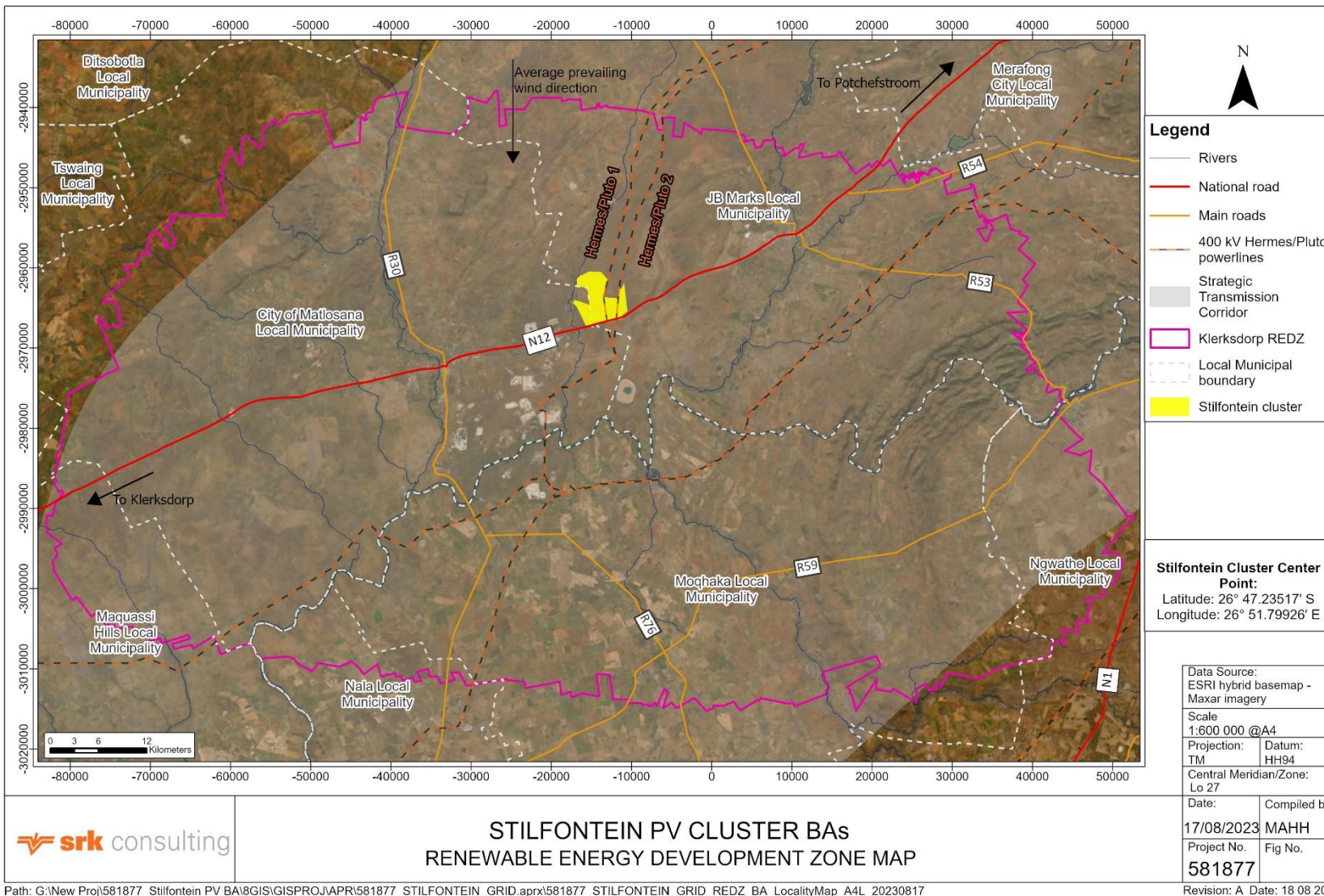
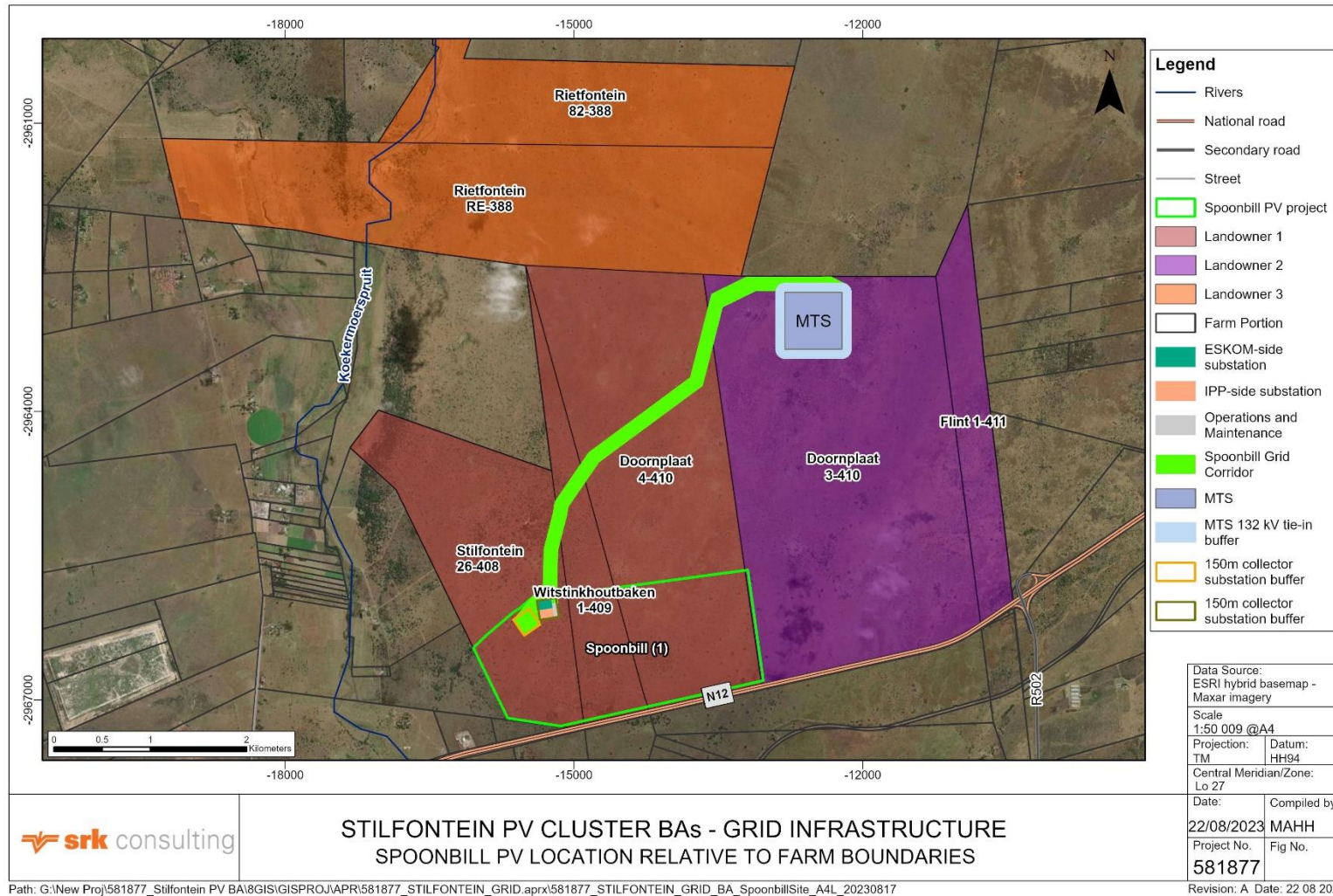
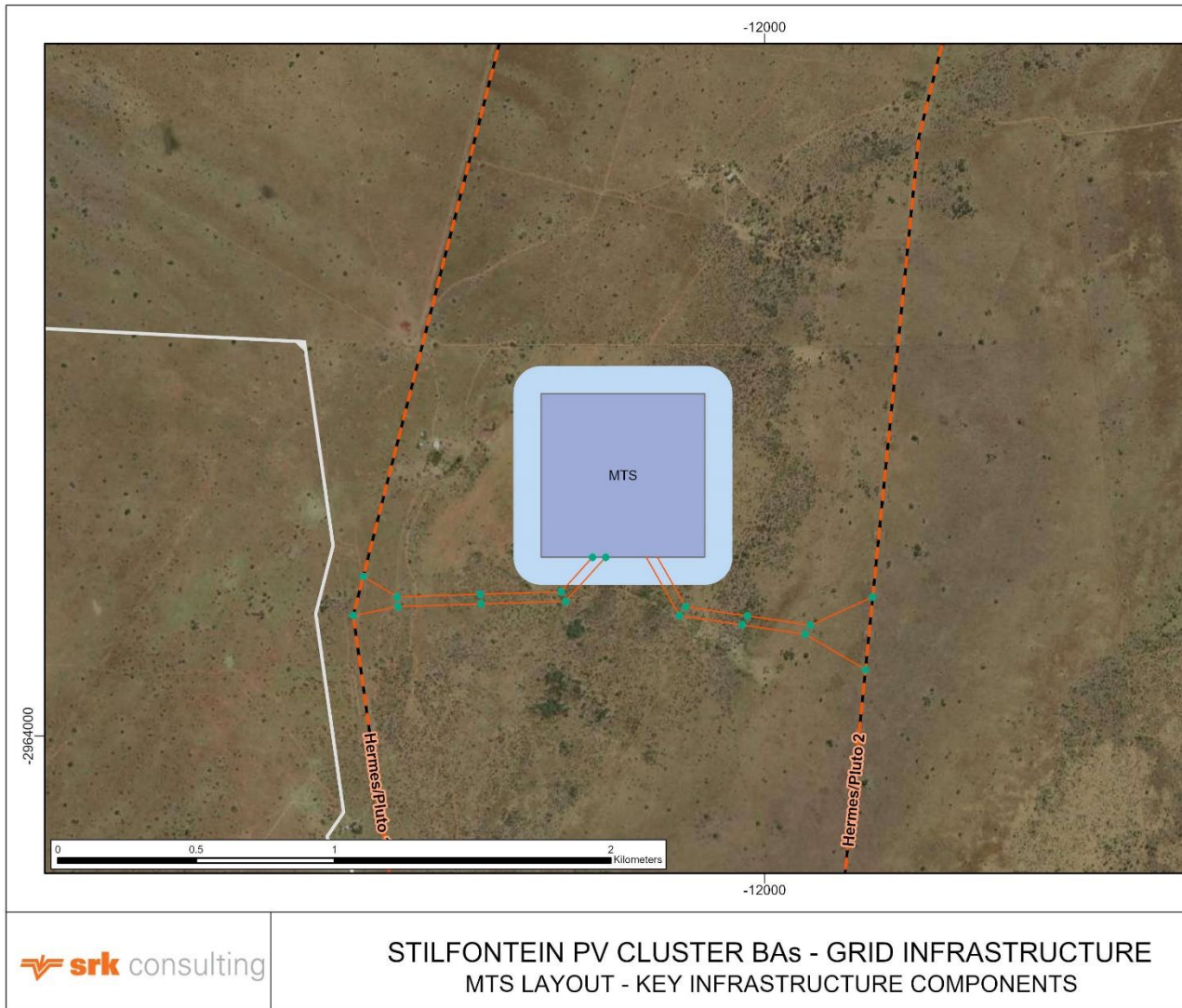


Figure 1-2: Location of the Stilfontein PV Cluster in relation to the Klerksdorp REDZ and the Central Strategic Transmission Corridor



**Figure 1-3: Location of the MTS<sup>1</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> More site layout detail is presented in Error! Reference source not found.



---

Figure 7-3.

## 1.3 Structure of this Report

This report discusses relevant environmental legislation and its application to this project, outlines the BA process, presents a detailed project description and environmental baseline, details the stakeholder engagement process followed and assesses the potential impacts of the project before concluding the report with a set of pertinent findings and key recommendations.

The report consists of the following sections:

### **Section 1: Introduction**

Provides an introduction and background to the proposed project and outlines the purpose of this document and the assumptions and limitation applicable to the study.

### **Section 2: Governance Framework and Environmental Process**

Provides a brief summary and interpretation of the relevant legislation as well as pertinent strategic planning documents and outlines the approach to the environmental process.

### **Section 3: Project Description**

Describes the location and current status of the site and provides a brief summary of the surrounding land uses as well as background to, motivation, and description of, the proposed project.

### **Section 4: Description of the Affected Environment**

Describes the biophysical and socio-economic characteristics of the affected environment against which potential project impacts are assessed.

### **Section 5: Stakeholder Engagement**

Details the stakeholder engagement approach and summarises stakeholder comments that informed the impact assessment.

### **Section 6: Environmental Impact Assessment**

Describes the specialist studies undertaken and assesses the potential impacts of the project utilising SRK's proven impact assessment methodology.

### **Section 7: Conclusions and Recommendations**

Provides an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS), describes the need and desirability of the project, and summarises the recommendations of the BAR.

The BAR has been prepared in accordance with Section 19 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 (as amended).

## 1.4 Content of the Report

Section 3 of Appendix 1 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 prescribe the required content in a BAR. These requirements and the sections of this BAR in which they are addressed, are summarised in Table 1-1.



**Table 1-1: Content of BAR as per Appendix 1 of the EIA Regulations, 2014**

Appendix 1 S 3(1) Ref:	Item	BAR Section:
(b) (i)	The 21-digit Surveyor General code of the properties	3.5.1
(b) (ii)	The physical address and farm name (where available)	3.5.1
(b) (iii)	The coordinates of the boundary of the property / properties (where (3) (b) (i) and (3) (b) (ii) are not available)	N/A
(c)	A plan indicating the location of the proposed activity / activities and associated infrastructure, or:	Figure 1-1 Figure 1-3
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div> </div> <div> <p><b>STILFONTEIN PV CLUSTER BAs - GRID              MTS LAYOUT - KEY INFRASTRUCTURE</b></p> </div> </div> <p>Path: G:\New Proj\581877_Stilfontein PV BA\GIS\GISPROJ\APR\581877_STILFONTEIN_GRID_V3.aprx\F7-3_MTS_GRID_A4L_20220314</p>		
(c) (i)	For linear activities: a description and coordinates of the	Figure 7-3 3.5.3, Figure 1-3

<b>Appendix Item</b> <b>1 S 3(1)</b> <b>Ref:</b>	<b>BAR Section:</b>
corridor in which the proposed activity is to be undertaken	
(d) A description of the scope of the proposed activity, including:	
(d) (i) All listed and specified activities trigger and being applied for	2.1.1.1
(d) (ii) A description of the associated structures and infrastructure related to the development	3
(e) A description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including:	
(e) (i) An identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks, and instruments that are applicable to this activity and have been considered in the preparation of the report; and	2
(e) (ii) How the proposed activity complies with and responds to the legislation and policy context, plans, guidelines, tools frameworks, and instruments;	2, 7.2
(f) A motivation for the need and desirability for the proposed development, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location	3.3, 7.2
(g) A motivation for the preferred site, activity and technology alternative	7.4

<b>Appendix Item 1 S 3(1) Ref:</b>	<b>BAR Section:</b>	
(h)	A full description of the process followed to reach the proposed development footprint within the approved site, including:	
(h) (i)	Details of all the alternatives considered;	3.4, 6.1
(h) (ii)	Details of the public participation process undertaken in terms of regulation 41 of the Regulations, including copies of the supporting documents and inputs;	5
(h) (iii)	A summary of the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and an indication of the manner in which the issues were incorporated, or the reasons for not including them	5.2.3
(h) (iv)	The environmental attributes associated with the alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects;	4
(h) (v)	The impacts and risks identified, including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts can be reversed, may cause irreplaceable loss	6

<b>Appendix Item 1 S 3(1) Ref:</b>		<b>BAR Section:</b>
	of resources, and can be avoided, managed or mitigated	
(h) (vi)	The methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks associated with the alternatives	6.1.3
(h) (vii)	Positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environment and on the community that may be affected focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects	6, Table 7-1
(h) (viii)	The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and level of residual risk	6, Table 7-1
(h) (ix)	The outcome of the site selection matrix	3.4
(h) (x)	If no alternatives, including alternative locations for the activity were investigated, the motivation for not considering such; and	3.4
(h) (xi)	A concluding statement indicating the preferred alternatives, including preferred location of the activity	7.4

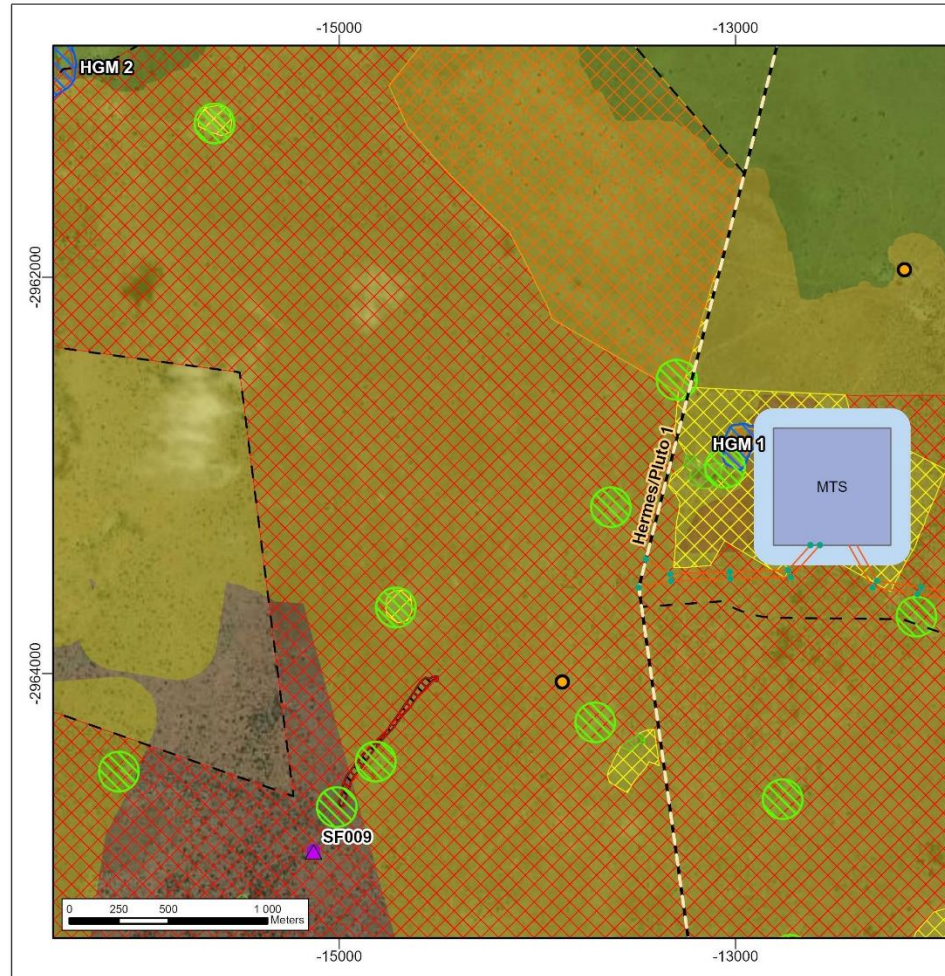
<b>Appendix Item 1 S 3(1) Ref:</b>	<b>BAR Section:</b>
(i) A full description of the process undertaken to identify, assess and rank the impacts the activity and associated structures and infrastructure will impose on the preferred location through the life of the activity, including:	6
(i) (i) A description of all environmental issues and risks that were identified during the environmental impact assessment process	6
(i) (ii) An assessment of the significance of each issue and risk and an indication of the extent to which the issue and risk could be avoided or addressed by the adoption of mitigation measures;	6
(j) An assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk, including:	
(j) (i) Cumulative impacts	0
(j) (ii) The nature, significance and consequences of the impact and risk	6
(j) (iii) The extent and duration of the impact and risk	6
(j) (iv) The probability of the impact and risk occurring	6
(j) (v) The degree to which the impact and risk can be reversed	6
(j) (vi) The degree to which the impact and risk may cause	6

<b>Appendix Item 1 S 3(1) Ref:</b>	<b>BAR Section:</b>
	irreplaceable loss of resources
(j) (vii)	The degree to which the impact and risk can be avoided, managed or mitigated;
(k)	Where applicable, a summary of the findings and impact management measures identified in any specialist report complying with Appendix 6 to these Regulations and an indication as to how these findings and recommendations have been included in the final report;
(l)	An EIS which contains:
(l) (i)	A summary of the key findings of the environmental impact assessment

**Appendix Item**  
**1 S 3(1)**  
**Ref:**

**BAR Section:**

- (l) (ii) A map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity and its associated structures and the infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers



**STILFONTEIN PV CLUSTER BAs - GRID  
 MTS CONNECTION INFRASTRUCTURE**

Path: G:\New Proj\581877\_Stilfontein PV BA\8GIS\GISPROJ\PROJ\581877\_STILFONTEIN\_SENSITIVITY\581877\_STILFONTEIN\_SENSITIVITY\581877\_STILFONTEIN\_GRID\_BA\_MTS\_sense\_A4L\_20231020

Figure 7-1  
 Figure 7-2

- (l) (iii) A summary of the positive and negative impacts and risks of the proposed activity and identified alternatives

7.1

- (m) Based on the assessment, and where applicable, impact management measures from specialist reports, the recording of the proposed impact management outcomes for the development for inclusion in the EMPr;

6, 7.3

<b>Appendix Item 1 S 3(1) Ref:</b>	<b>BAR Section:</b>
(n) Any aspects which were conditional to the findings of the assessment either by the EAP or specialist which are to be included as conditions of authorisation	7.4
(o) A description of any assumptions, uncertainties and gaps in knowledge which relate to the assessment and mitigation measures proposed;	1.5
(p) A reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should or should not be authorised, and if the opinion is that it should be authorised, any conditions that should be made in respect of that authorisation;	7.4
(q) Where the proposed activity does not include operational aspects, the period for which the environmental authorisation is required and the date on which the activity will be concluded and the post construction monitoring requirements finalised	N/A
(r) An undertaking under oath or affirmation by the EAP in relation to	Appendix A
(r) (i) The correctness of the information provided in the reports	
(r) (ii) The inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and I&APs	
(r) (iii) The inclusion of inputs and recommendations	



<b>Appendix Item</b> <b>1 S 3(1)</b> <b>Ref:</b>	<b>BAR Section:</b>
	from the specialist reports where relevant; and
(r) (iv)	Any information provided by the EAP to interested and affected parties and any responses by the EAP to comments or inputs made by interested and affected parties; and
(s)	Where applicable, details of any financial provision for the rehabilitation, closure, and ongoing post decommissioning management of negative environmental impacts; <span style="float: right;">N/A</span>
(t)	Where applicable, any specific information required by the competent authority; and <span style="float: right;">N/A</span>
(u)	Any other matter required in terms of section 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act. <span style="float: right;">N/A</span>

## 1.5 Assumptions and Limitations

As is standard practice, the report is based on a number of assumptions and is subject to certain limitations. These are as follows:

- Information provided by Mainstream and specialists is assumed to be accurate and correct;
- The assessment of the significance of impacts of the proposed development on the affected environment has been based on the assumption that the activities will be confined to those described in Section 3. If there are any substantial changes to the project description, impacts may need to be reassessed;
- Where detailed design information is not available, the precautionary principle, i.e. a conservative approach which overstates negative impacts and understates benefits, has been adopted;
- It is assumed that the stakeholder engagement process undertaken during the BA process has identified all relevant concerns of stakeholders; and
- Mainstream and its contractors will in good faith implement the mitigation measures identified in this report. To this end it is assumed that Mainstream and its contractors will commit sufficient resources and employ suitably qualified personnel.

Limitations and assumptions applicable to specific specialist studies are listed in the respective specialist reports. Notwithstanding the above, SRK is confident that these assumptions and limitations do not compromise the overall findings of the report.

## 2 Governance Framework and Environmental Process

### 2.1 Legal Requirements

There are a number of regulatory requirements at local, provincial and national level with which the proposed development will have to conform. Key legal requirements include the following:

- National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (NEMA);
  - EIA Regulations, 2014, as amended, promulgated in terms of NEMA;
  - National Web Based Environmental Screening Tool;
  - Procedures for the Assessment and Minimum Criteria for Reporting;
  - Procedures relating to renewable energy projects in a REDZ;
  - Procedures relating to renewable energy projects in a STC;
  - Exclusion of certain infrastructure from the requirement to obtain EA;
  - Procedures relating to Integrated Resource Plan Projects;
- National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 (NEM:BA);
- National Water Act 36 of 1998 (NWA); and
- National Heritage Resources Act 25 of 1999 (NHRA).

A brief summary of SRK's understanding of the relevant Acts and Regulations that are applicable to this study is provided below. Note that other legislative requirements may also pertain to the proposed project. As such, the summary provided below is not intended to be definitive or exhaustive and serves only to highlight key environmental legislation and obligations.

#### 2.1.1 National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998

NEMA establishes a set of principles which all authorities must consider when exercising their powers. These include the following:

- Development must be sustainable;
- Pollution must be avoided or minimised and remedied;
- Waste must be avoided or minimised, reused or recycled;
- Negative impacts must be minimised; and
- Responsibility for the environmental consequences of a policy, project, product or service applies throughout its life cycle.

Section 28(1) states that “*every person who causes, has caused or may cause significant pollution or degradation of the environment must take reasonable measures to prevent such pollution or degradation from occurring, continuing or recurring*”. If such degradation/pollution cannot be prevented, then appropriate measures must be taken to minimise or rectify such pollution. These measures may include:

- Assessing the impact on the environment;
- Informing and educating employees about the environmental risks of their work and ways of minimising these risks;
- Ceasing, modifying or controlling actions which cause pollution/degradation;

- Containing pollutants or preventing movement of pollutants;
- Eliminating the source of pollution; and
- Remedying the effects of the pollution.

**Legal requirements for this project:**

*Mainstream has a responsibility to ensure that the proposed activities and the BA process conform to the principles of NEMA. In terms of Section 28 of NEMA, the proponent is obliged to take actions to prevent pollution or degradation of the environment, and to ensure that the environmental impacts associated with the project are considered and mitigated where possible.*

**2.1.1.1 EIA Regulations, 2014 (as amended)**

Sections 24 and 44 of NEMA make provision for the promulgation of regulations that identify activities which may not commence without an EA issued by the competent authority. In this context, the EIA Regulations, 2014<sup>2</sup>, promulgated in terms of NEMA, govern the process, methodologies and requirements for the undertaking of EIAs in support of EA applications. Listing Notices 1-3 in terms of NEMA list the activities that require EA (“NEMA listed activities”).

The EIA Regulations, 2014 lay out two alternative authorisation processes. Depending on the type of activity that is proposed, either a Basic Assessment (BA) process or a Scoping and Environmental Impact Reporting (S&EIR) process is required to obtain EA. Listing Notice (LN) 1<sup>3</sup> lists activities that require a BA process, while LN 2<sup>4</sup> lists activities that require S&EIR. LN 3<sup>5</sup> lists activities in certain sensitive geographic areas that require a BA process.

The regulations for both processes – BA and S&EIR – stipulate that:

- Public participation must be undertaken as part of the assessment process;
- The assessment must be conducted by an independent Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP);
- The relevant authorities must respond to applications and submissions within stipulated time frames;
- Decisions taken by the authorities can be appealed by the proponent or any other Interested and Affected Party (IAP); and
- A draft EMPr must be compiled and released for public comment.

Government Notice (GN) R982 of 2014 sets out the procedures to be followed and content of reports compiled during the BA and S&EIR processes.

The NEMA National Appeal Regulations<sup>6</sup> make provision for appeal against any decision issued by the relevant authorities. In terms of the Regulations, an appeal must be lodged with the relevant authority in writing within 20 days of the date on which notification of the decision (EA) was sent to the applicant or IAP (as applicable). The applicant, the decision-maker, an IAP and organs of state must submit their responding statement, if any, to the appeal authority and the appellant within 20 days from the date of receipt of the appeal submission.

The proposed project includes activities that are listed in terms of the EIA Regulations, 2014 (see Table 2-1).

---

<sup>2</sup> GN R982 of 2014, as amended

<sup>3</sup> GN R983 of 2014, as amended

<sup>4</sup> GN R984 of 2014, as amended

<sup>5</sup> GN R985 of 2014, as amended

<sup>6</sup> GN R993 of 2014, as amended

**Table 2-1: NEMA listed activities (2014) applicable to the proposed project**

No.	Listed Activity	Applicability
<b>Listing Notice 1</b>		
11	The development of facilities or infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity - (i) outside urban areas or industrial complexes with a capacity of more than 33 but less than 275 kilovolts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 132/400kV MTS with a footprint of up to 36 ha (600 m x 600 m)</li> <li>• 400kV Loop In / Loop Out above ground transmission line between MTS and the existing 400kV PLUTO / HERMES 1 and 2 powerlines</li> </ul>
12	The development of: (ii) Infrastructure or structures with a physical footprint of 100 m <sup>2</sup> more;(a) within a watercourse; where such development occurs (c) within 32 m of a watercourse.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Placement of several power line pylons within 32 m of HGM1 wetland, with a cumulative footprint possibly exceeding 100 m<sup>2</sup></li> </ul>
14	The development and related operation of facilities or infrastructure, for the storage, or for the storage and handling, of a dangerous good, where such storage occurs in containers with a combined capacity of 80 cubic metres or more but not exceeding 500 cubic metres.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The MTS will contain a bunded oil dam for transformer oils with a capacity of 80 cubic metres or more but not exceeding 500 cubic metres</li> </ul>
24	The development of a road - (i) with a reserve wider than 13.5 meters or where no reserve exists where the road is wider than 8 meters	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Where existing access roads are not available, new gravel access roads up to 12 m wide will be constructed, including access to the site from the N12</li> </ul>
27	The clearance of an area of 1 ha or more, but less than 20 ha of indigenous vegetation, except where such clearance of indigenous vegetation is required for- (i) the undertaking of linear activity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 132/400kV MTS with a footprint of up to 36 ha (600m x 600m)</li> <li>• Associated laydown area <i>400kV Loop In / Loop Out above ground transmission line between MTS and 400kV PLUTO / HERMES 1 and 2 powerlines is a linear activity and thus not triggered</i></li> </ul>
28	Residential, mixed, retail, commercial, industrial or institutional developments where such land was used for agriculture, game farming, equestrian purposes or afforestation on or after 01 April 1998 and where such development: (ii) will occur outside an urban area, where the total land to be developed is bigger than 1ha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MTS (deemed to be an industrial facility) with a footprint of up to 36 ha (600m x 600m) on land currently used for grazing</li> </ul>
56	The widening of a road by more than 6 metres, or the lengthening of a road by more than 1 kilometre (i) where the existing reserve is wider than 13.5 metres; or (ii) where no reserve exists, where the existing road is wider than 8 metres.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Where existing access roads are not sufficient, they may be widened to up to 12 m wide and/or lengthened by more than 1km</li> </ul>
<b>Listing Notice 2</b>		
9	The development of facilities or infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity with a capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 132/400kV MTS</li> <li>• 400kV Loop In / Loop Out above ground transmission line between MTS and 400kV PLUTO / HERMES 1 and 2 powerlines</li> </ul>

No.	Listed Activity	Applicability
	of 275 kilovolts or more, outside an urban area or industrial complex	
15	The clearance of an area of 20 ha or more of indigenous vegetation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 132/400kV MTS with a footprint of up to 36 ha (600m x 600m)</li> </ul>

**Listing Notice 3**

3	The development of masts or towers of any material or type used for telecommunication broadcasting or radio transmission purposes where the mast or tower a) is to be placed on a site not previously used for this purpose; and (b) will exceed 15 metres in height but excluding attachments to existing buildings and masts on rooftops. (h) North West (i) Outside urban areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Telecoms mast ~90 m will be mounted on MTS</li> </ul>
10	The development and related operation of facilities or infrastructure for the storage, or storage and handling of a dangerous good, where such storage occurs in containers with a combined capacity of 30 but not exceeding 80m <sup>3</sup> h) North West vi) Areas within a watercourse or wetland, or within 100m from the edge of a watercourse or wetland.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Storage of fuel and other flammable and combustible materials on site during construction</li> </ul>
12	The clearance of an area of 300 m <sup>2</sup> or more of indigenous vegetation (h) North West (vi) areas within a watercourse or wetland or within 100 m from the edge of a watercourse or wetland	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Placement of 132 kV 400 kV power line pylons and clearance associated with the power line (including two tyre track service roads) within 100 m of HGM1 wetland</li> </ul>
18	The widening of a road by more than 4 m, or the lengthening of a road by more than 1 km (h) North West (ix) areas within a watercourse or wetland, or within 100 m from the edge of a watercourse or wetland.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Possible widening of existing access roads within 100 m of HGM1 wetland</li> </ul>

**Legal requirements for this project in relation to the EIA process:**

Mainstream is obliged to apply for EA for the activities listed in Table 2-1. As the project triggers activities in LN 2, a S&EIR process would ordinarily be required. However, a BA process is being undertaken as indicated by Sections 2.1.1.4, 2.1.1.5 and 2.1.1.6 **Error! Reference source not found.**

**2.1.1.2 National Web Based Environmental Screening Tool**

In terms of Regulation 16(1)(b)(v) of the NEMA EIA Regulations, 2014, an application for EA must include “the report generated by the national web based environmental screening tool”. On 20 March 2020, notice was given that that the submission of such a report is compulsory for all applications submitted after 4 October 2019 (GN R960 of 2020).

The national screening tool is based on broad scale national environmental sensitivity data and identifies specialist studies that may be required for the EIA. It is the responsibility of the EAP to confirm whether these specialist studies will be conducted or provide a motivation as to why the specialist studies will not be conducted as part of the EIA process.

The Screening Tool Report has informed the identification of specialist studies required for the BA and, where applicable, motivation as to why certain specialist studies have not been scoped was submitted to DFFE during the pre-application meeting.

### **Legal requirements for this project**

*The Screening Tool identified a number of site sensitivities in relation to the proposed project and proposed a number of specialist studies, which were evaluated by the EAP (see Table 6-1). The Screening Tool Report and a verification report confirming the specialist studies proposed to inform the BA process were submitted to DFFE on 21 February 2022 with the Pre-Application Meeting Request form. The Screening Tool Report was updated subsequent to the adjustment of the project boundaries and the updated Screening Tool Report is attached the EA application form. The Site Sensitivity Verification Report is presented as Appendix E.2.*

### **2.1.1.3 Procedures for the Assessment and Minimum Criteria for Reporting**

In terms of the *Procedures for the Assessment and Minimum Criteria for Reporting on Identified Environmental Themes when Applying for EA* (GN R320 of 2020):

- The EAP and / or specialist(s) must verify (update) the findings of the Screening Tool based on desktop sources and a site inspection and compile a Verification Report;
- Where the Screening Tool indicates that a site is sensitive for an “Identified Environmental Theme”, a specialist assessment (for more sensitive sites) or Compliance Statement (for less sensitive sites) must be undertaken, depending on the verified sensitivity of the site;
- Specialists must ensure compliance with the *Protocols for the assessment and minimum report content requirements of environmental impacts* published in GN320 of 2020 and GN 1150 of 2020 for the various identified environmental themes; and
- Should the Screening Tool (or EAP) identify site sensitivities for disciplines which are not “Identified Environmental Themes” and specialist assessment is required, specialist reporting must comply with the requirements of Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations, 2014.

### **Legal requirements for this project**

*Specialists report content must comply with the relevant Protocols for the assessment and minimum report content requirements of environmental impacts or Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations, 2014. Evidence of compliance is provided in each specialist report (see Appendix D).*

### **2.1.1.4 Procedures Relating to Renewable Energy Projects in a REDZ**

GN 142 of 2021 (*Identification of Procedures to be Followed when Applying for or Deciding on an Environmental Authorisation Application for Large Scale Wind and Solar Photovoltaic Facilities, when occurring in Renewable Energy Development Zones*) stipulates the following for renewable energy projects triggering LN2 Activity 1, including associated activities necessary for the realisation of such a facility (e.g. access roads):

- They must follow a BA process if the entire facility lies within a REDZ; and
- The timeframe for decision-making on such applications is 57 days<sup>7</sup>.

GN 145 of 2021 (*Identification of Procedures to be Followed when Applying for or Deciding on an Environmental Authorisation Application for the Development of Electricity Transmission and Distribution*

---

<sup>7</sup> Reduced from 107 days

*Infrastructure when Occurring in Renewable Energy Development Zones*) stipulates the following for transmission line projects triggering LN1 Activity 11 where the greater part of the facility is located within a REDZ:

- The applicant must negotiate a route with all landowners and submit the route as part of the EA application;
- The Generic Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the Development and Expansion of Substation Infrastructure for Transmission and Distribution of Electricity and the Generic Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the Development and Expansion of Overhead Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure, published in GN 435 of 2019, apply; and
- The timeframe for decision-making on such applications is 57 days.

**Legal requirements for this project in relation to the EIA process:**

*The project triggers LN 1 Activity 11, and the applicant must thus negotiate a powerline route with all landowners and submit the route as part of the EA application. These negotiated agreements will be submitted directly to DFFE.*

*Furthermore, the applicant must use the Generic EMPr for **Development and Expansion of Substation Infrastructure for Transmission and Distribution of Electricity** (Appendix E.1) and for **Development and Expansion of Overhead Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure** (Appendix E.2).*

*The DFFE decision-making timeframe on the BA process for this project is 57 days.*

#### **2.1.1.5 Procedures Relating to Transmission Projects in an STC**

GN 113 of 2018 (*Procedure to be Followed in Applying for Environmental Authorisation for Large Scale Electricity Transmission and Distribution Development Activities* identified in terms of Section 24(2)(a) of the NEMA when occurring in Geographical Areas of Strategic Importance) identifies five Strategic Transmission Corridors (STC).

GN 113 of 2018 stipulates the following for transmission projects triggering LN 2 Activity 9, including any other activities necessary for the realisation of such a facility (e.g. access roads):

- They must follow a BA process if the greater part of the proposed facility is to occur in a STC;
- The timeframe for decision-making on such applications is 57 days<sup>8</sup>; and
- The applicant must negotiate a route with all landowners and submit the route as part of the EA application.

**Legal requirements for this project in relation to the EIA process:**

*The project lies entirely within the Central STC (see Figure 1-2). The project triggers LN 2 Activity 9, and instead of following an S&EIR process the project must thus be assessed via a BA process. DFFE must reach a decision on the EA application within 57 days of submission of the BAR.*

*Furthermore, the applicant must negotiate a powerline route with all landowners and submit the route as part of the EA application. These negotiated agreements, in the form of signed lease agreements with each landowner, will be submitted directly to DFFE.*

---

<sup>8</sup> Reduced from 107 days



### **2.1.1.6 Exclusion of Certain Infrastructure from the Requirement to Obtain EA**

GN 2313 of 2022 (*Adoption of the Standard for Development and Expansion of Power Lines and Substations within Identified Geographical Areas and the Exclusion of this Infrastructure from the Requirement to Obtain an Environmental Authorisation*, published on 27 July 2022):

- Adopts the Standard for the Development and Expansion of Power Lines and Substations within Identified Geographical Areas Revision 2 June 2022; and
- Excludes transmission projects triggering LN 1 Activities 11 and/or 47 and LN 2 Activity 9, including any other activities necessary for the realisation of such a facility (e.g. access roads), from the requirement to obtain EA if they are located within:
  - STCs; and
  - Areas for which the environmental themes identified in the national web based environmental screening tool are verified as being of medium or low sensitivity.

If the criteria are fulfilled, the proponent must follow the registration process laid out in Chapter 2 of the Standard, which includes verification of site sensitivity by specialists and/or the EAP and a public participation process. The competent authority must issue a registration number within 30 days of receipt of the information required in terms of the Standard.

The Generic EMPs for the *Development and Expansion of Substation Infrastructure for Transmission and Distribution of Electricity* and the *Development and Expansion of Overhead Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure*, published in GN 435 of 2019, apply.

#### **Legal requirements for this project in relation to the EIA process:**

*The project lies entirely within the Central STC, and triggers LN 2 Activity 9. However, two of the environmental themes identified in the national web based environmental screening tool are verified as being of high sensitivity, viz. avifauna and terrestrial biodiversity (see Section 2.1.1.2). As such, the project is not excluded from the requirement to obtain EA and must follow a BA process.*

### **2.1.1.7 Procedures Relating to Integrated Resource Plan Projects**

According to GN 779 of 2016 (*Identification of the Minister as Competent Authority for the Consideration of Processing of Environmental Authorisations and Amendments Thereto for Activities Related to the Integrated Resource Plan 2010-2030*), the Minister of Environmental Affairs (i.e. DFFE) is the Competent Authority for activities which are identified as activities in terms of Section 24(2)(a) of the Integrated Resources Plan 2010-2030 (IRP) and any updates thereto.

#### **Legal requirements for this project in relation to the EIA process:**

*It was confirmed with the DFFE that the competent authority for the EA application is DFFE, as renewable energy projects are activities identified in the IRP (see Section 2.2.1).*

## **2.1.2 National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004**

The purpose of the NEM:BA is to provide for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity and the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection. The NEM:BA makes provision for the publication of bioregional plans and the listing of ecosystems and species that are threatened or in need of protection. Threatened or Protected Species Regulations (2007), Guidelines for the determination of bioregions and the preparation and publication of bioregional plans (2009) and a National List of Ecosystems that are Threatened and in Need of Protection (2011) have been promulgated in terms of NEM:BA.

A published bioregional plan is a spatial plan indicating terrestrial and aquatic features in the landscape that are critical for conserving biodiversity and maintaining ecosystem functioning. These areas are referred to as Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) in terms of NEM:BA. Bioregional plans provide guidelines for avoiding the loss or degradation of natural habitat in CBAs with the aim of informing, EIAs and land-use planning (including Environmental Management Frameworks [EMFs], Spatial Development Frameworks [SDFs], and Integrated Development Plans [IDPs]).

Permits to carry out a restricted activity involving listed threatened or protected species or alien species may only be issued after an assessment of risks and potential impacts on biodiversity has been undertaken.

**Legal requirements for this project:**

*Although a bioregional plan has not been formally published for any areas in North West Province, Ecological Support Areas (ESA) preliminarily identified by the South African Botanical Institute (SANBI) are located in the project area. The impacts of the project on the biodiversity are assessed. Measures to manage and control alien invasive species, as required by NEM: BA, are included as required mitigation.*

### **2.1.3 National Water Act 36 of 1998**

Water use in South Africa is controlled by the NWA. The executive authority is the Department of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation (DHSWS). The NWA recognises that water is a scarce and unevenly distributed national resource in South Africa. Its provisions are aimed at achieving sustainable and equitable use of water to the benefit of all users and to ensure protection of the aquatic ecosystems associated with South Africa's water resources. The provisions of the Act are aimed at discouraging pollution and wastage of water resources.

In terms of the Act, a land user, occupier or owner of land where an activity that causes or has the potential to cause pollution of a water resource has a duty to take measures to prevent pollution from occurring. If these measures are not taken, the responsible authority may do whatever is necessary to prevent the pollution or remedy its effects, and to recover all reasonable costs from the responsible party.

Section 21 of the NWA specifies a number of water uses, including:

- (a) taking water from a water resource;
- (b) storing water;
- (c) impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse;
- (d) engaging in a stream flow reduction activity contemplated in section 36 [of the NWA];
- (e) engaging in a controlled activity identified as such in section 37(1) [of the NWA] or declared under section 38(1) [of the NWA];
- (f) discharging waste or water containing waste into a water resource through a pipe, canal, sewer, sea outfall or other conduit;
- (g) disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water resource;
- (h) disposing in any manner of water which contains waste from, or which has been heated in, any industrial or power generation process;
- (i) altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse;
- (j) removing, discharging or disposing of water found underground if it is necessary for the efficient continuation of an activity for the safety of people; and

- (k) using water for recreational purposes.

These water uses require authorisation in terms of Section 22 (1) of the Act, unless they are listed in Schedule 1 of the NWA, are an existing lawful use, fall under a General Authorisation issued in terms of section 39 or if the responsible authority waives the need for a licence.

**Legal requirements for this project:**

*Water will be sourced from authorised service providers and/or existing boreholes and/or abstracted from surface water sources, which will be determined during detailed design.*

*The taking of water from a water resource may be considered a water use in terms of S21 (a). The storing of water may be considered a water use in terms of S21 (b). The placement of project structures and infrastructure, including stormwater infrastructure, within 500 m of a wetland boundary may be considered a water use in terms of S21 (c) and (i). The storage of waste or release of wastewater may be considered a water use in terms of S21 (g). A Water Use Authorisation, if required for the above water uses, will be pursued if and when the project is awarded preferential bidder status and final design is underway<sup>9</sup>.*

### **2.1.4 National Heritage Resources Act 25 of 1999**

The protection and management of South Africa’s heritage resources are controlled by the NHRA. The enforcing authority for the Act is the South African National Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA). In terms of the Act, historically important features such as graves, trees, archaeological artefacts / sites and fossil beds are protected. Similarly, culturally significant symbols, spaces and landscapes are also afforded protection.

Section 38 of the NHRA requires that any person who intends to undertake certain categories of development must notify SAHRA at the very earliest stage of initiating such a development and must furnish details of the location, nature and extent of the proposed development. SAHRA has designed the South African Heritage Resources Information System (SAHRIS) database to assist the developer in providing the necessary information to enable SAHRA to decide whether a Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be required.

Section 38 also makes provision for the assessment of heritage impacts as part of an EIA process and indicates that, if such an assessment is deemed adequate, a separate HIA is not required. There is however the requirement in terms of Section 38 (8) for the consenting authority (in this case the DFFE) to ensure that the evaluation of impacts on the heritage resources fulfils the requirements of the relevant heritage resources authority (SAHRA), and that the comments and recommendations of the heritage resources authority are taken into account prior to the granting of the consent.

Section 38(1) of the NHRA specifies activities that trigger the need for the proponent to notify SAHRA of the proposed development, in order for SAHRA to determine the need for further Heritage Assessment. The proposed project triggers a number of these activities, including:

- a) Construction of a road, wall, power line, canal or other similar form of linear development or barrier over 300 m in length; and

<sup>9</sup> As noted in the REIPPPP Bid Window 5 Overview, the Department of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation will only consider applications for water use licenses in respect of Projects, once Bidders are appointed as Preferred Bidders by the DMRE. For this reason, a Preferred Bidder which, due to no fault, negligence or contributory negligence of its own, does not have a Water Use License at Commercial Close or whose Water Use License is, at that date, the subject of any appeal, review proceedings or other legal challenge, will, in the Department’s sole discretion, be afforded an extension of time as is reasonable in the circumstances (DMRE, 2021).

- c) Any development or activity that will change the character of a site (i) exceeding 5 000 m<sup>2</sup> in extent, (ii) involving three or more existing erven or subdivisions thereof.

**Legal requirements for this project:**

*Mainstream is required to notify SAHRA, via the SAHRIS database, of the proposed project and to undertake the assessments deemed necessary by SAHRA. Heritage, archaeological and paleontological impacts were assessed as part of the BA process, and the Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) and BA documentation was uploaded to SAHRIS.*

## 2.2 Planning Policy Framework

This section discusses a number of key planning documents and policies relevant to the project. The policies and plans briefly discussed below include regional and local development and spatial plans:

- IRP for Electricity 2010 – 2030;
- Strategic Integrated Projects (SIP);
- Renewable Energy Strategy for North West Province (2012);
- North West Provincial Development Plan (PDP) (2013);
- North West Biodiversity Sector Plan (NW BSP) (2015);
- DKKDM Integrated Development Plan (IDP) (2017); and
- JB Marks Local Municipality (LM) IDP (2017).

Section 7.2 examines the extent to which the proposed project is consistent with relevant plans and policies.

### 2.2.1 Integrated Resource Plan for Electricity 2010 – 2030

The IRP was promulgated in March 2011 and updated in 2019. It determines South Africa's long term electricity demand and the type, cost, timing and generating capacity required to meet this demand. The IRP set targets for additional generation capacity of ~40 000 MW to meet future electricity demand and secure reserves, and provides input into economic, environmental and social policy development and funding.

The IRP further identifies the preferred generation technologies required to meet the expected demand up to 2030, incorporating objectives such as reduced greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, reduced water consumption, affordable electricity, diversified electricity generation sources and localised and regional development. The envisaged energy mix includes coal, nuclear, natural gas, renewable energy and hydropower sources. Energy (battery) storage is deemed important in the South African context where the power system does not have the requisite storage capacity or flexibility required for the large increase in renewable energy.

By 2019, ~18 000 MW of new generation capacity had been committed (commissioned, procured or officially announced by the Minister of Energy), including ~6 500 MW procured under the REIPPPP, 9 600 MW by the Medupi and Kusile coal power plants and 1 005 MW from gas turbines (DoE, 2019).

The 2019 IRP envisages the installation of a further 6 000 MW of solar and 14 400 MW of wind energy between 2022 and 2030, taking solar and wind energy to 10.5% and 22.5% of total installed capacity and 6.3% and 17.8% of generated electricity in South Africa, respectively. This is to be achieved through annual

installation of 1 000 MW PV in most years until 2030 and 1 600 MW wind energy each year until 2030<sup>10</sup>. The IRP also envisages the installation of 2 088 MW additional energy storage capacity (see Figure 2-1) (DoE, 2019).

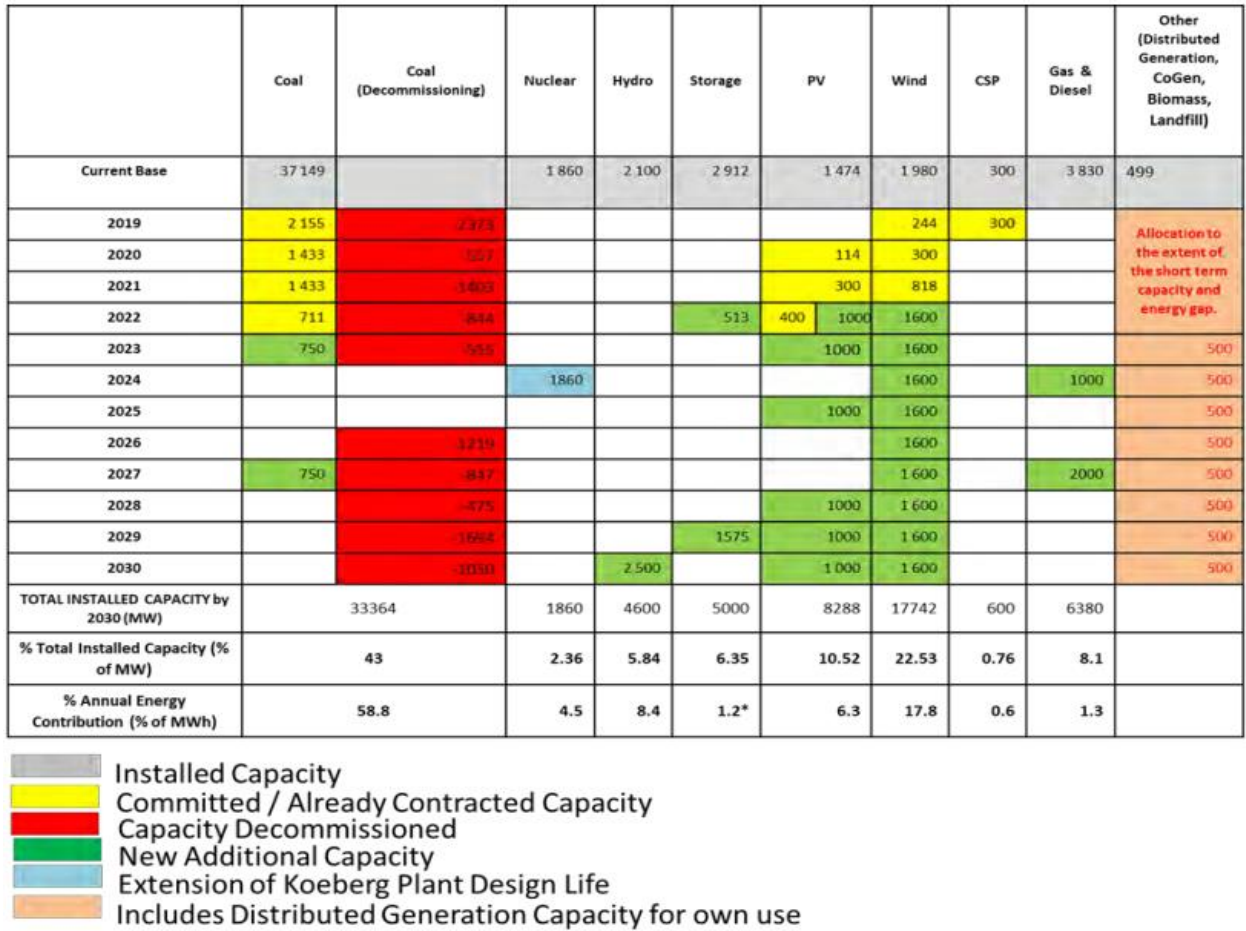


Figure 2-1: Emerging long-term plan in 2019 IRP

Sources: (DoE, 2019)

### 2.2.2 Strategic Integrated Projects

Eighteen Strategic Integrated Projects (SIP) have been developed and approved in terms of the National Infrastructure Plan (2012) to support economic development and address service delivery in South Africa. Each SIP comprises a large number of specific infrastructure components and programmes.

The National Infrastructure Plan (2012) identifies three energy SIPs (South African Government, n.d.):

- SIP 8: Green energy in support of the South African economy
  - Support sustainable green energy initiatives on a national scale through a diverse range of clean energy options as envisaged in the Integrated Resource Plan (IRP2010); and
  - Support bio-fuel production facilities.
- SIP 9: Electricity generation to support socio-economic development

<sup>10</sup> In July 2022, the South African President announced that amount of new renewable energy generation capacity that would be procured through REIPPPP Bid Window 6 would be doubled to 5 200 MW (Hall, 2022).

- Accelerate the construction of new electricity generation capacity in accordance with the IRP2010 to meet the needs of the economy and address historical imbalances.
- Monitor implementation of major projects such as new power stations: Medupi, Kusile and Ingula.
- SIP 10: Electricity transmission and distribution for all
  - Expand the transmission and distribution network to address historical imbalances, provide access to electricity for all and support economic development.
  - Align the 10-year transmission plan, the services backlog, the national broadband roll-out and the freight rail line development to leverage off regulatory approvals, supply chain and project development capacity.

### **2.2.3 Renewable Energy Strategy for North West Province (2012)**

The Renewable Energy Strategy (RES) for North West Province was developed in recognition of the need to participate in South Africa's renewable energy sector. The RES provides guidelines for the development and production of renewable energy across North West Province, including domestic and industrial renewable energy generation, and analyses the feasibility of various renewable energy resources in the Province. Solar (PV and solar water heaters) facilities were identified as some of the most viable alternatives for renewable energy projects in North West Province.

The aims of the RES are to improve the North West Province environment, reduce its contribution to GHG emissions and alleviate energy poverty, whilst promoting economic development and job creation and developing a green economy. The RES therefore provides a foundation for North West Province's contribution to renewable energy in South Africa.

With a large percentage of the North West Province population living in rural areas, access to municipality-supplied electricity is relatively limited.

### **2.2.4 North West Provincial Development Plan (2015)**

The Provincial Development Plan (PDP) (2013) identifies eight development priorities to promote economic transformation in North West Province, including the promotion of environmental sustainability and economic infrastructure (including renewable energy infrastructure).

The PDP identifies various actions related to renewable energy generation to be implemented in the Province, including the development of energy infrastructure and service provision, expanding renewable energy with particular focus on solar power (solar power heaters and PV technologies), sustaining ecosystems, using natural resources more effectively, improving energy efficiency and developing more renewable sources.

The PDP 2030 vision envisages that renewable sources will comprise a large share of the provincial energy sector, and that economic growth and development are promoted through adequate investment in energy infrastructure, whilst ensuring social equity and environmental sustainability are maintained. The PDP identifies high initial capital expenditure and limited grid access as challenges to the implementation of renewable energy projects.

### **2.2.5 North West Biodiversity Sector Plan (2015)**

The North West Biodiversity Sector Plan (NW BSP) (READ, 2015) was compiled to inform land use planning, environmental, water and land use assessments and natural resource management. The aim of the NW BSP is to identify the minimum area required to maintain and conserve major ecological infrastructure and biodiversity in North West Province by mapping biodiversity priority areas (i.e. CBAs and

ESAs). The NWBSP comprehensively revised the CBAs and ESAs previously mapped and described in the 2009 North West Biodiversity Conservation Assessment.

Identified key pressures on biodiversity in North West Province are associated with agriculture (cropping and grazing), mining and urban expansion. Other pressures include the dependence of rural communities on natural harvestable products, poor water catchment and river management, climate change, alien invasives and harvesting, poaching and trading in indigenous species (READ, 2015).

CBAs are defined as terrestrial and aquatic areas of the landscape that need to be maintained in a natural or near-natural state to ensure the continued existence and functioning of species and ecosystems and the delivery of ecosystem services. Maintaining an area in a natural state can include a variety of biodiversity compatible land uses and resource uses.

ESAs are defined as terrestrial and aquatic areas that are not essential for meeting biodiversity representation targets (thresholds), but which nevertheless play an important role in supporting the ecological functioning of CBAs and/or in delivering ecosystem services that support socio-economic development, such as water provision, flood mitigation or carbon sequestration. The degree or extent of restriction on land use and resource use in these areas may be lower than that recommended for CBAs.

In relation to spatial planning, the difference between CBAs and ESAs relates to where in the landscape the biodiversity impact of any land use activity action is most significant (READ, 2015):

- In CBAs where a change in land use results in a change from the desired ecological state, the impact on biodiversity as a result of this change is most significant locally at the point of impact through the direct loss of a biodiversity feature (e.g. loss of a populations or habitat). Land management objectives are to maintain the area in a natural or near-natural state that maximises the retention of biodiversity pattern and ecological process; and
- In ESAs a change from the desired ecological state is most significant elsewhere in the landscape through the indirect loss of biodiversity due to a breakdown, interruption or loss of an ecological process pathway. Land management objectives are to maintain the area in at least a semi-natural state as ecologically functional landscapes that retain basic natural attributes (ESA 1) or to maintain as much ecological functionality as possible (generally these areas have been substantially modified) (ESA 2).

CBA and ESAs identified in the project region are shown in Figure 2-2,

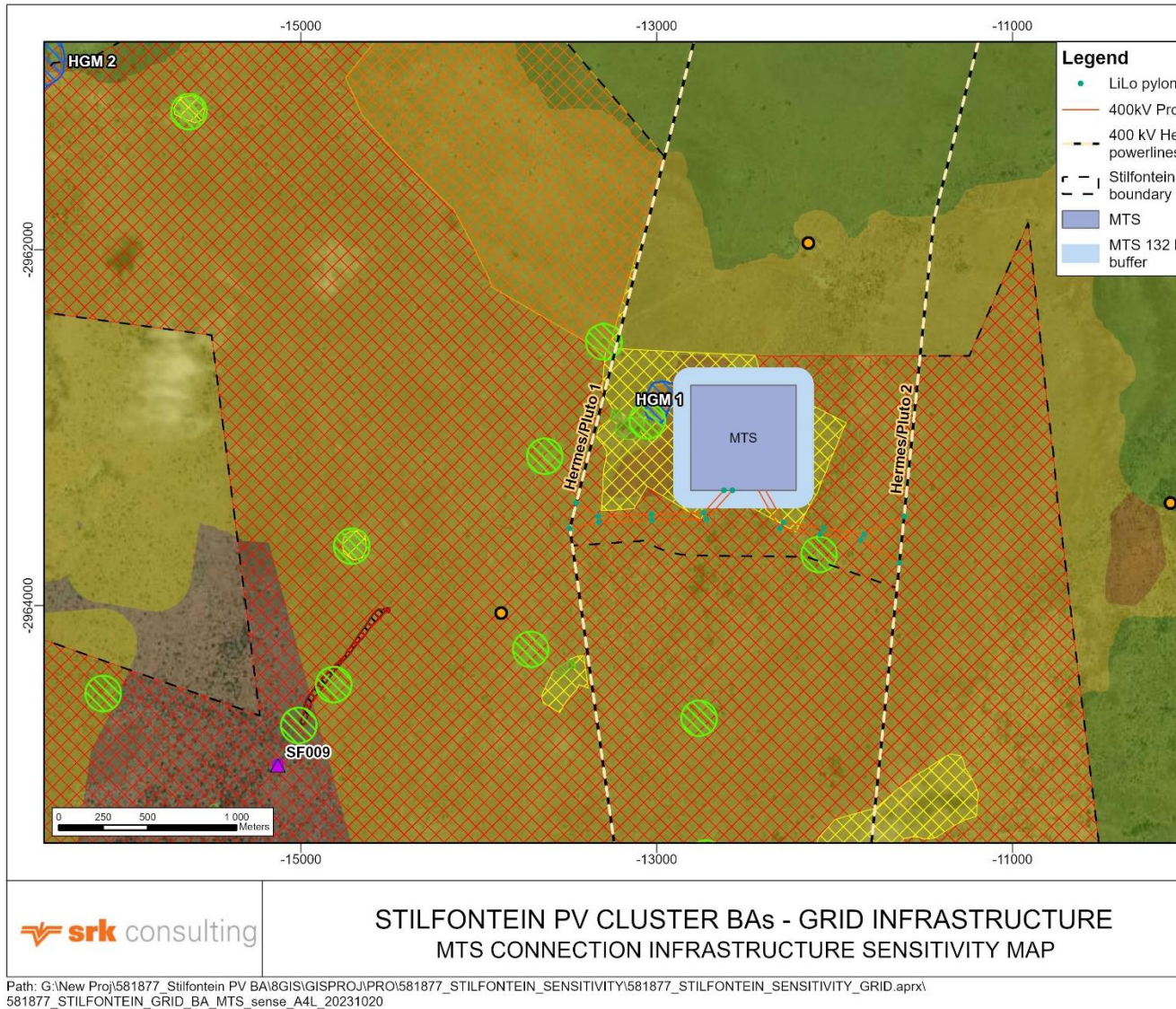
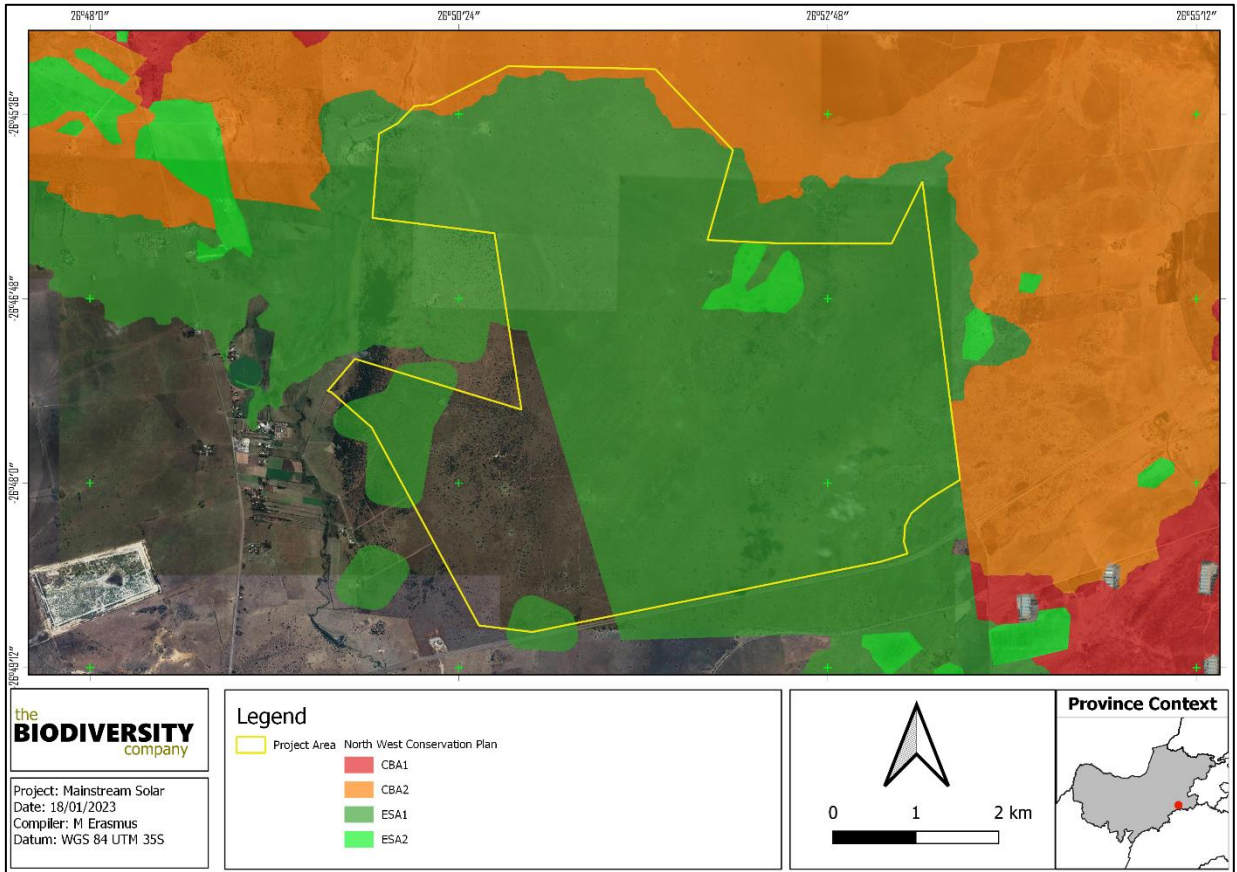


Figure 7-1 and Figure 7-2.

The DKKDM IDP places particular focus on community empowerment through the reduction of poverty, unemployment and inequality (DKKDM, 2017). It describes district key performance areas as basic service delivery and infrastructure development, municipal institutional development transformation, district economic development, financial viability and management, good governance and public participation, and spatial rationale. The vision for the DKKDM is described as exploring prosperity through sustainable service delivery for all.

While the IDP does not make reference to renewable energy, the 2021/22 IDP Review identifies “Optimum use of existing resources including agriculture, forestry, renewable energy” potential as a Spatial Development Value of the Province (DKKDM, 2021).





**Figure 2-2: Priority areas identified in the NWBSP for the project region**

Sources: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

**2.2.6 Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (2017)**

The DKKDM IDP places particular focus on community empowerment through the reduction of poverty, unemployment and inequality (DKKDM, 2017). It describes district key performance areas as basic service delivery and infrastructure development, municipal institutional development transformation, district economic development, financial viability and management, good governance and public participation, and spatial rationale. The vision for the DKKDM is described as exploring prosperity through sustainable service delivery for all.

While the IDP does not make reference to renewable energy, the 2021/22 IDP Review identifies “Optimum use of existing resources including agriculture, forestry, renewable energy” potential as a Spatial Development Value of the Province (DKKDM, 2021).

**2.2.7 JB Marks Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (2017)**

The JB Marks LM IDP (2017 – 2022) (North West 405 Municipality, 2017) objectives include the expedition of service delivery, with development priorities being access to electricity, land and housing, agriculture, rural and economic development and quality sustainable service delivery.

Neither the 2017 – 2022 IDP nor its 2020 – 2021 amendment (JB Marks LM, 2020) reference renewable energy, which was not a considered factor in the area other than in the form of solar water geysers implemented in parts of the municipality. However, the most recent 2022-23 Draft IDP cites the North West Province goal of expanding renewable energy, with special reference to solar power, and the national goal of using renewable energy to promote employment and economic growth. While these are not translated

into municipal goals or strategies for renewable energy, their reference indicates increasing local awareness of the sector (JB Marks LM, 2022).

## 2.3 Environmental Process

The general approach to this study is guided by the principles contained in Section 2 of NEMA and those of Integrated Environmental Management (IEM).

NEMA lists a number of principles that apply to the actions of organs of state and that also serve as reference for the interpretation of environmental legislation and administration of environmental processes. The principles most relevant to environmental assessment processes and projects for which authorisation is required are summarised below.

### Principles relevant to the BA process:

- Adopt a risk-averse and cautious approach;
- Anticipate and prevent or minimise negative impacts;
- Pursue integrated environmental management;
- Involve stakeholders in the process; and
- Consider the social, economic and environmental impacts of activities.

### Principles relevant to the project:

- Place people and their needs at the forefront of concern and serve their needs equitably;
- Ensure development is sustainable, minimises disturbance of ecosystems and landscapes, pollution and waste, achieves responsible use of non-renewable resources and sustainable exploitation of renewable resources;
- Assume responsibility for project impacts throughout its life cycle; and
- Polluter bears remediation costs.

This BA process complies with these principles through its adherence to the EIA Regulations, 2014 and associated guidelines, which set out clear requirements for, *inter alia*, impact assessment and stakeholder involvement (see below), and through the assessment of impacts and identification of mitigation measures. An initial analysis of the project's compliance with the aims of sustainable development is provided in the impact assessment.

In accordance with the IEM Information Series (DEAT, 2004), an open, transparent approach, which encourages accountable decision-making, has been adopted.

### The underpinning principles of IEM require:

- Informed decision making;
- Accountability for information on which decisions are made;
- A broad interpretation of the term "environment";
- An open participatory approach in the planning of proposals;
- Consultation with interested and affected parties;
- Due consideration of alternatives;

- An attempt to mitigate negative impacts and enhance positive impacts of proposals;
- An attempt to ensure that the social costs of development proposals are outweighed by the social benefits;
- Democratic regard for individual rights and obligations;
- Compliance with these principles during all stages of the planning, implementation and decommissioning of proposals; and
- The opportunity for public and specialist input in the decision-making process.

Although various environmental authorisations, permits or licences are required before the proposed project may proceed, the regulatory authorities are committed to the principle of cooperative governance and, in order to give effect to this principle, a single BA process is required to inform all applications. To this end, a single BAR (this report) has been compiled. The BAR will be submitted to the DFFE in support of the application for environmental authorisation of NEMA listed activities.

Supplementary applications will be made as required for the remaining authorisations.

The study will also be guided by the requirements of the EIA Regulations, 2014 (see Section 2.1.1.1), which are more specific in their focus and define the detailed approach to the BA process, as well as relevant guidelines published by the (former) DEA and the Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (DEA&DP), including:

- DEA’s Integrated Environmental Management Guideline: Guideline on Need and Desirability (DEA, 2017a), which contains “information on best practice and how to meet the peremptory requirements prescribed by the legislation and sets out both the strategic and statutory context for the consideration of the need and desirability of a development involving any one of the NEMA listed activities” (DEA, 2017);
- DEA&DP’s EIA Guideline and Information Document Series (DEA&DP, 2013), which includes guidelines on Generic Terms of Reference (ToR) for EAPs and Project Schedules, Public Participation, Alternatives, Need and Desirability and Exemption Applications and Appeals; and
- DEA’s Public Participation Guideline (DEA, 2017), which provides information and guidance for applicants, stakeholders and EAP’s on the public participation requirements as prescribed in the EIA Regulations of 2014.

**2.3.1 Submission of Applications**

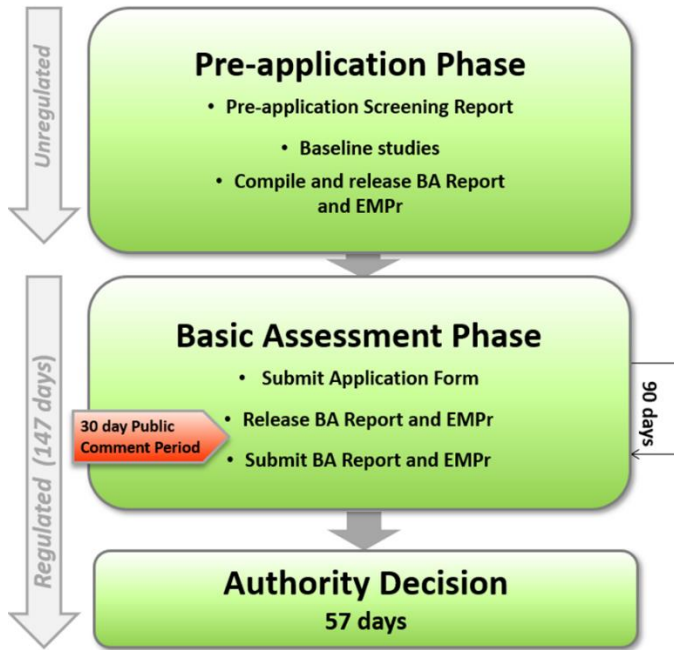
Various environmental authorisations are required before the proposed project may proceed. Application forms must generally be submitted at the outset of or during the BA process. The required environmental applications and their status are listed in Table 2-2.

**Table 2-2: Applications for authorisation**

Application	Authority	Status
EA	DFFE	The application was submitted to the DFFE on 20 October 2023 in compliance with Section 16 of the EIA Regulations, 2014.
Heritage	SAHRA	Notification will be submitted via the SAHRIS during the course of the project.

**2.3.2 BA Process and Phasing**

The BA process consists of two phases, namely the Pre-Application (which has been completed) and Basic Assessment Phases (the current phase) (see Figure 2-3 below).



**Figure 2-3: BA Process for projects located within a REDZ**

**The objectives of the Pre-Application Phase are to:**

- Identify stakeholders, including neighbouring landowners/ residents and authorities;
- Undertake specialist studies;
- Compile the draft BA Report which should:
  - Describe the affected environment;
  - Document and contextualise the biophysical baseline conditions of the study area and the socio-economic conditions of affected communities;
  - Assess in detail the potential environmental and socio-economic impacts of the project;
  - Identify environmental and social mitigation measures to avoid and/or address the impacts assessed; and
  - Develop and/or amend environmental and social management plans based on the mitigation measures developed in the BA Report and EMPr.

**The objectives of the BA Phase are to:**

- Inform stakeholders of the proposed activity, feasible alternatives and the BA process;
- Provide stakeholders with the opportunity to participate effectively in the process and identify any issues and concerns associated with the proposed activity, review specialist study ToR;
- Build capacity amongst stakeholders during the BA process so that they may actively and meaningfully participate;
- Inform and obtain contributions from stakeholders, including relevant authorities, the public and local communities and address their relevant issues and concerns;
- Submit a final BA Report to the relevant authorities (in this case, DFFE).

Further detail about activities undertaken or planned during the BA process is presented in Section 5.

### 3 Project Description

Mainstream proposes to construct the Stilfontein MTS infrastructure – basically a substation and overhead grid infrastructure, i.e. powerlines - to step-up 132kV generated by the solar plants to 400kV and feed the power from the Stilfontein Solar Cluster into the national grid. The PV facilities and their associated grid connection infrastructure are the subject of separate BA applications for which EAs were granted in September 2023 and are briefly described in Section 3.1.

The MTS infrastructure is located in the JB Marks Local Municipality within the larger Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality in North West Province, South Africa. The project site is located approximately 13 km east of the town of Stilfontein along the N12 and forms part of the proposed, larger Stilfontein Solar PV Cluster.

An overview of the proposed MTS and associated grid infrastructure key components and dimensions is provided in Section 3.5.

#### 3.1 Stilfontein PV Cluster Overview

The project forms part of the proposed, larger Stilfontein Solar PV Cluster, which comprises nine PV facilities of up to 150 MW each, as well as the associated grid connections, BESS and ancillary infrastructure. **Separate EA applications have / are being submitted for the individual PV facilities and grid connections, respectively through separate BA processes** (see Figure 3-1). The Stilfontein Solar Cluster is briefly described here.

The Stilfontein Cluster is entirely located within the Klerksdorp REDZ and the Central STC (see Figure 1-1 and Figure 1-2). The Cluster has a total footprint of ~2 114 ha. At this stage it not known which IPPs or facilities (projects) will be selected as preferred bidders through the REIPPPP bidding process and/or potentially receive interest from private off-takers, and thus which components of the Stilfontein Cluster will be developed.

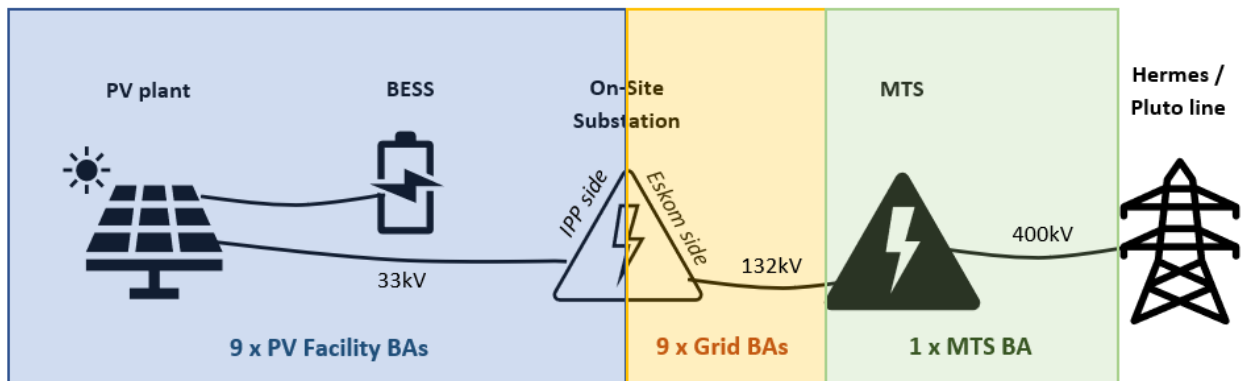


Figure 3-1: Components included in individual BA processes for the Stilfontein Solar Cluster

##### 3.1.1 PV Facilities

The Stilfontein Cluster comprises nine proposed Solar PV facilities, each with a notional development area (footprint) of ~220 to 405 ha: Spoonbill (Project 1), Sunbird (Project 2), Swallow (Project 3), Snipe (Project 4), Shrike (Project 5), Stilfontein (Project 6), Sparrow (Project 7), Starling (Project 8) and Swift (Project 9) (see Figure 1-1).

Each PV facility comprises the following key components:

- PV arrays with a total maximum export capacity of up to 150 MW;

- Internal cabling connecting panels, inverters and transformers;
- Lithium-Ion BESS;
- 11-33kV underground cable / overhead powerline between the PV facility and on-site substation;
- Internal gravel roads;
- Fencing and lighting;
- Material and construction laydown areas;
- Stormwater infrastructure;
- Water supply and water storage infrastructure;
- Offices, including ablutions with septic tank / conservancy tanks sewage treatment infrastructure;
- Operational control centre and maintenance area; and
- Security guard house.

### 3.1.2 Grid Connection Infrastructure

The Stilfontein Cluster, if fully developed, will include nine on-site substations, one Main Transmission Substation and associated powerlines (see Figure 1-1):

- Nine 11-33/132kV on-site substations each serving one PV facility;
- 132kV above ground powerline, varying in length between ~1.8 and 3.8 km, from 11-33/132kV on-site substations to the Main Transmission Substation (MTS);
- One 132/400kV MTS;
- 400kV above ground powerline (Loop In / Loop Out), approximately 1 km long, connecting to the existing 400 kV Eskom Pluto / Hermes 1 and 2 powerlines; and
- Material laydown areas (temporary for construction phase and permanent for operation phase).

A comprehensive description of the proposed MTS grid connection infrastructure, which is the subject of this BA process, is provided in Sections 3.5.

## 3.2 Description of the Project Area

The project is located in the JB Marks Local Municipality, approximately 13 km east of the town of Stilfontein and 25 km west of Potchefstroom, directly north of the N12.

The project area falls within the western portion of the highveld, the elevated inland plateau that comprises roughly 30% of South Africa's land area. The highveld terrain is generally devoid of mountains and consists primarily of rolling plains. The rainy season occurs in summer, with substantial afternoon thunderstorms being typical occurrences in November, December and January. Frost occurs in winter. The highveld is home to some of the South Africa's most important commercial farming areas, as well as its largest concentration of metropolitan centres (Wikipedia, 2022).

Stilfontein was established in 1949 as a residential centre for three new large gold mines, the Hartebeesfontein, Buffelsfontein and Stilfontein mines (Wikipedia, 2021). Potchefstroom is one of the largest urban centres in North West Province and accommodates five tertiary institutions, including the Potchefstroom Campus of the North-West University. Industry (including steel, food and chemical processing), services and agriculture are important economic sectors (Wikipedia, 2021a).

The N12 National Road dual carriageway connects Kimberley and Klerksdorp west of the project site to Potchefstroom and Johannesburg east of the project site. The project can be directly accessed from the N12.

The project area has a rural setting. It is dominated by grassland and low bushes. Numerous farmsteads and extensive agricultural lands are located within and adjacent to the Stilfontein Cluster project area. The site and surrounding area are primarily used for game farming, and open veld is dissected with game fence. Isolated gravel roads, farmsteads and waterholes are located throughout in the project area.

The existing 400 kV Hermes – Pluto 1 and 2 powerlines traverse the site in a north-southerly direction (see Figure 1-1 and Figure 3-2).



**Figure 3-2: View of the project area**

Sources: SRK, February 2022

### **3.3 Proponent’s Project Motivation**

#### **3.3.1 Motivation for Renewable Energy Generation in South Africa**

##### **3.3.1.1 Increasing Power Generation to Reduce Loadshedding Impacts on Economic Production and Quality of Life**

South Africa has been forced to implement periodic loadshedding due to insufficient power production in nine of the 16 years between 2007 and 2022 (see Figure 3-3). Loadshedding accelerated in 2022, which was another record year for loadshedding as the supply gap widens further; more loadshedding was experienced from July to September 2022 than in any year before, and September 2022 on its own had loadshedding than in the whole of 2020 (BusinessTech, 2022) (CSIR, 2022). Loadshedding is a result of broadly declining electricity production (see Figure 3-4), which increased renewable energy production could only partly compensate for (see Figure 3-5). However, Figure 3-4 and Figure 3-5 illustrate that renewable energy, which can be commissioned in a relatively short period, has an important role to play to address South Africa’s energy shortage.

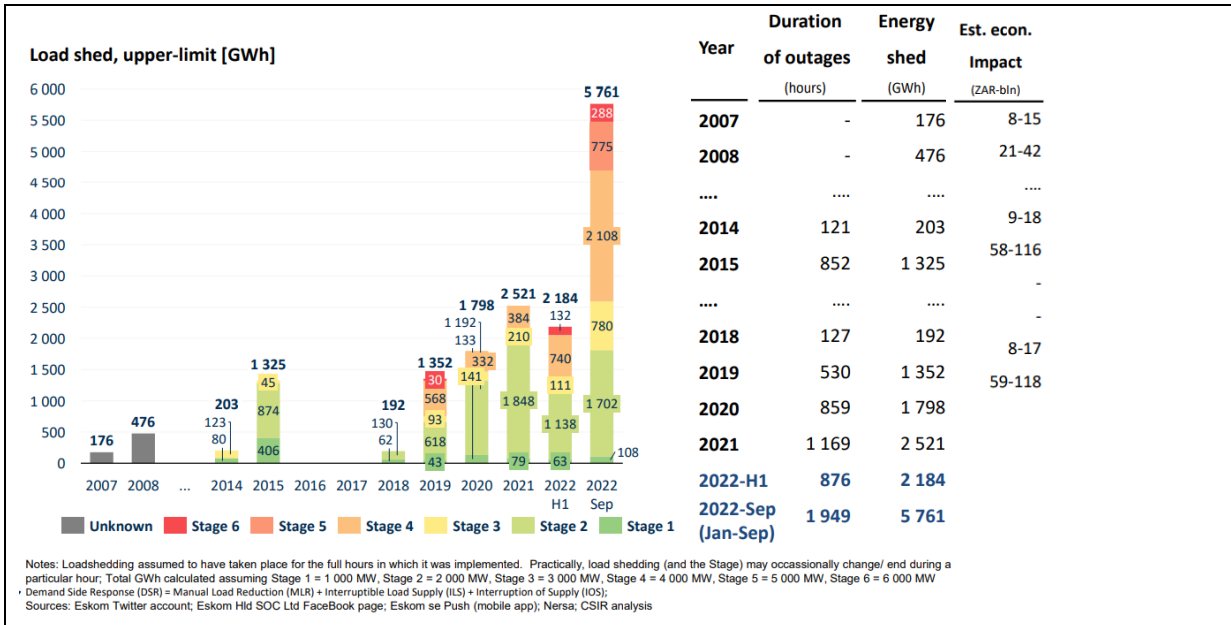


Figure 3-3: History of loadshedding in South Africa

Source: (CSIR, 2022), (CSIR, 2020)

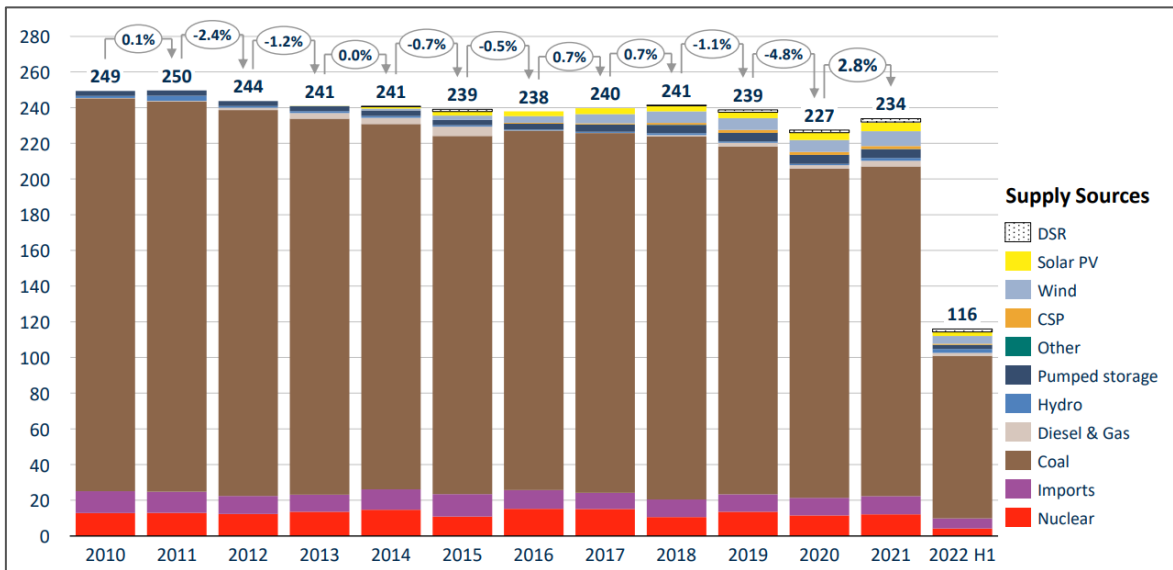
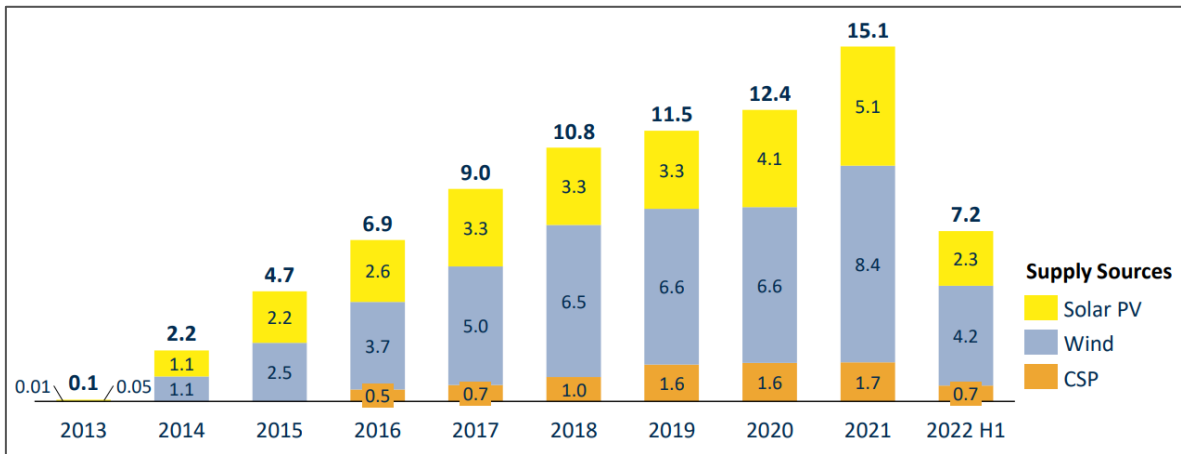


Figure 3-4: Electricity production in South Africa (TWh)

Source: (CSIR, 2022)





**Figure 3-5: Renewable energy production in South Africa (TWh)**

Source: (CSIR, 2022)

Loadshedding has significant consequences for economic production, business operation and quality of life. Mathe (2023) considers conservatively that each stage of full-day load-shedding to cost the South African economy about R1 billion, with most severe impacts on small companies and service delivery mainly affecting poor communities, schools, universities, hospitals, clinics, postal offices and police stations. SAWEA (2019) estimates that loadshedding costs the South African economy R90/kWh, and that the operation of diesel-powered Open Cycle Gas Turbines to generate additional emergency power costs ~R3/kWh. CSIR (2020) similarly estimates an economic impact of R45 – R90/kWh, so that loadshedding of 1 352 GWh in 2019 had an impact on the economy of ~R 60 to 120 billion (see Figure 3-3), while loadshedding in 2022 would have cost the economy R480 billion (Mathe, 2023).

The REIPPPP was established at the end of 2010 as one of the South African Government's urgent interventions to enhance electrical power generation capacity in the country. Administered by the DMRE, the programme seeks to secure electricity from renewable and non-renewable energy sources, via private sector investment, whilst contributing to broader national development objectives (DMRE, 2021). In July 2022 it was announced that the originally anticipated generation capacity to be procured in Bid Window 6 would be doubled to ramp up electricity generation in South Africa (Hall, 2022).

An August 2021 amendment to the Electricity Regulation Act 4 of 2006 exempts embedded electricity generation projects between 1 MW and 100 MW from the previous requirement of applying for a generation licence, requiring them only to register with the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA). In February 2022 private electricity trading company Enpower Trading was issued a licence that allows it to transport energy from IPPs to private end-users in any location across the municipal and national electricity grid by 'wheeling' the energy across the national and municipal grid networks. These developments are expected to further drive availability of and demand for independently produced renewable energy in South Africa and increase in the number of South African IPPs (business essentials, 2022) independently of the REIPPPP.

### 3.3.1.2 Increasing Renewable Power Generation to Reduce Carbon Emissions from Energy Production

Once operational, PV plants produce electricity that is largely free of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions<sup>11</sup>. PV plants are thus considered important in the transition to a low-carbon economy to address climate change, especially

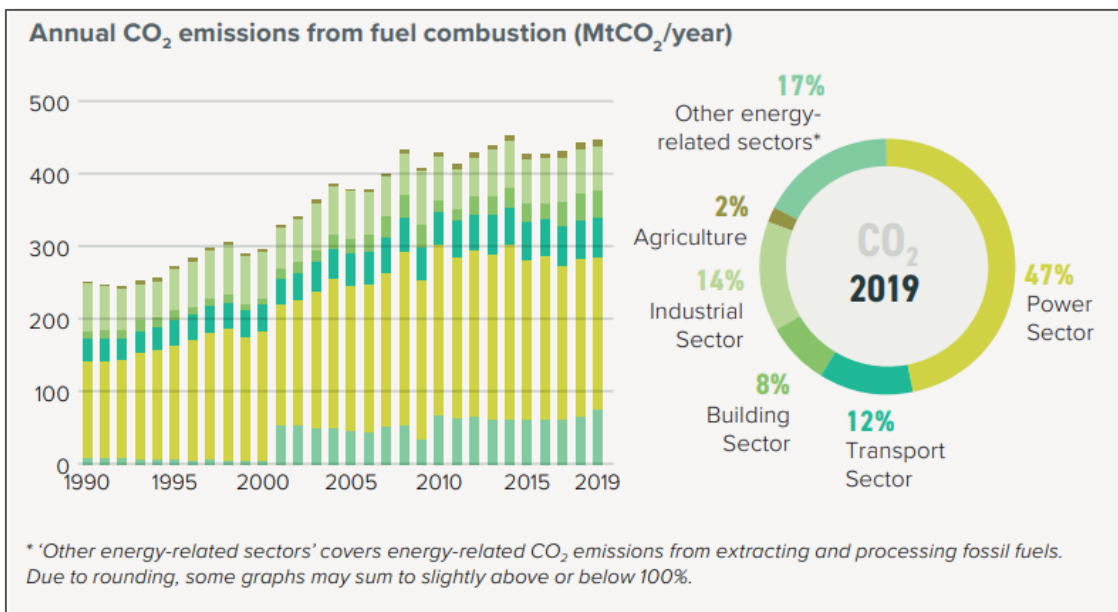
<sup>11</sup> It is noted that the manufacturing, transportation and installation of renewable energy plant components result in CO<sub>2</sub> equivalent (CO<sub>2</sub>-e) Greenhouse Gas (GHG) emissions. Volumes depend on the source and recycling content of

where they replace (current or future) electricity that generates high CO<sub>2</sub>-e emissions, such as in South Africa where electricity is primarily produced by coal fired power plants.

In 2019, electricity generated by Eskom produced ~212 Mt CO<sub>2</sub>-e (EcoMetrix Africa, 2020), ~44% of South Africa’s total emissions from fuel combustion (Our World in Data, n.d.) (see also Figure 3-6). Renewables generated 6.5% of power in South Africa in 2019, including 1.6% from solar facilities. That represents a 158% increase from 2014 to 2019, but is still low, and the level of power generated from coal has hardly decreased at 88% of the power mix (see Figure 3-7) (Climate Transparency, 2020).

The emissions intensity of the South African power sector and the energy intensity of its economy are both nearly double the G2012 average (see Figure 3-8), while at the same time South Africa’s share of renewable energy in power generation (6.5%) is low compared to the G20 average (27%) (Climate Transparency, 2020). In combination this provides for a concerning picture regarding South African GHG emissions, which are high relative to comparative countries. Renewable energy projects were thus identified in South Africa’s IRP as an important component of South Africa’s energy mix going forward (see Section 2.2.1).

By generating renewable energy, the project contributes not only to improving South Africa’s energy security but also to lowering the carbon intensity of South African energy production, by supplementing coal power generation supply from Eskom with solar energy.

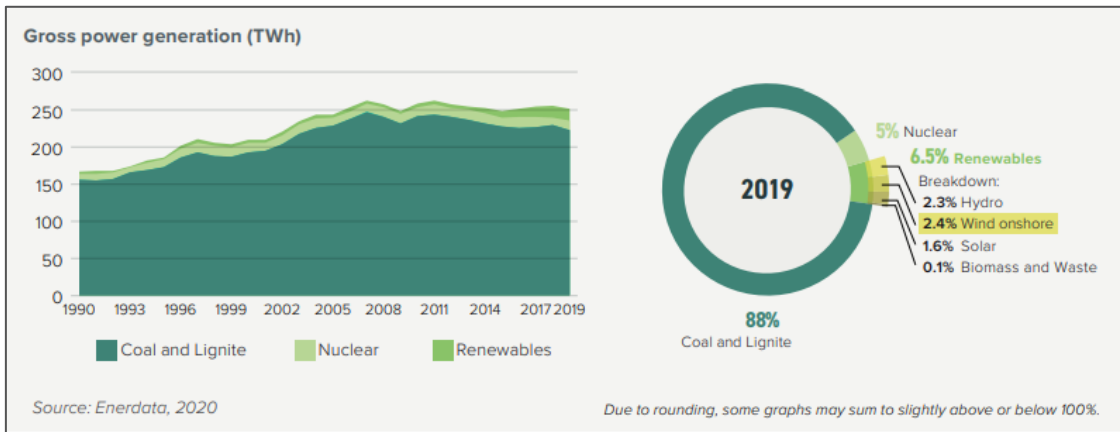


**Figure 3-6: Annual CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from fuel combustion in South Africa (million tons / year)**

Sources: (Climate Transparency, 2020)

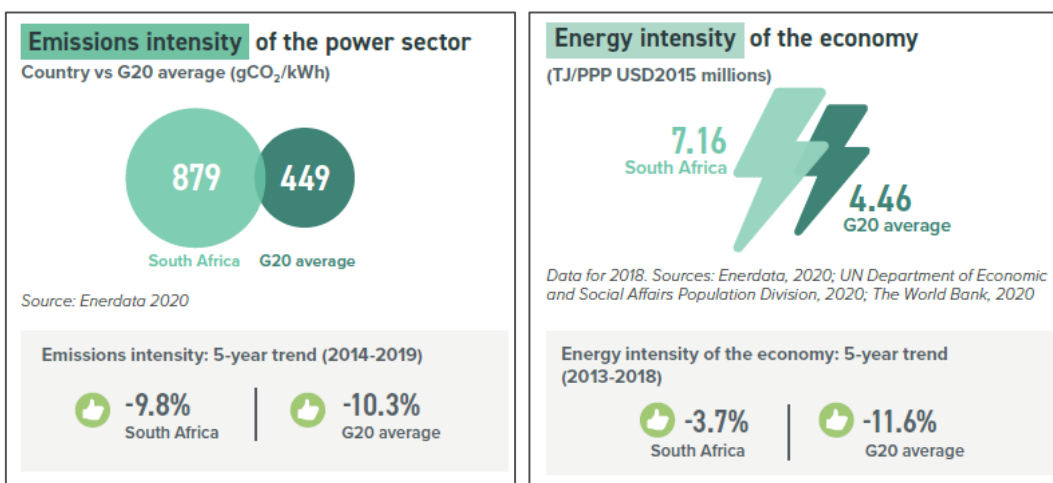
materials (particularly concrete and steel for WEFs and glass, steel and concrete for PV plants), type of energy used for manufacturing and distance over which materials are transported (IRENA, 2019).

<sup>12</sup> The G20 comprises Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, France, Germany, Japan, India, Indonesia, Italy, Mexico, Russia, South Africa, Saudi Arabia, South Korea, Turkey, the United Kingdom, the United States, and the European Union. Its members account for more than 80% of world GDP, 75% of global trade and 60% of the population of the planet (G20, n.d.).



**Figure 3-7: Gross power generation by source in South Africa**

Sources: (Climate Transparency, 2020)



**Figure 3-8: Power sector emissions intensity and economy energy intensity in South Africa**

Sources: (Climate Transparency, 2020)

### 3.3.2 Motivation for the Stilfontein Cluster projects

Mainstream intends generating renewable electricity at the nine Stilfontein PV facilities. The MTS and associated grid connection infrastructure is intended to step up and evacuate power from the on-site substations in the Stilfontein Cluster to the Eskom grid for onward transmission.

As noted in 3.3.1.1, reducing the risk of loadshedding through the provision of additional energy represents a benefit to the South African economy. The up to 150 MW PV project is forecast to generate 330 GWh of electricity per year<sup>13</sup>. Based on the values estimated by SAWEA (2019), the economic value of reduced

<sup>13</sup> Anticipated power output was not provided, and depends on various factors, such as the panel technology and solar irradiation. Productions rates vary across PV plants:

- In 2017, total PV installed capacity in South Africa was 2 186 MW, producing 3 095 GWh, or ~1 416 MWh per installed MW (Wikipedia, 2022).
- The 96MW Jasper Solar Power Project, operational in the Northern Cape since 2014, produces 180 GWh per year, or ~1 875 MWh per installed MW (Unwin, 2019).
- The more recent 75MW Kalkbult solar power plant, operational in the Northern Cape since 2019, produces 150 GWh of energy a year, or ~2 000 MWh per installed MW (Unwin, 2019).

load shedding associated with the total power produced by the project could amount to R30 billion, or a R990 million saving in diesel used to generate emergency power<sup>14</sup>, per annum.

Eskom has cited an immediate power gap of 4 000 to 6 000 MW (Business Day, 2022), of which the project installed capacity represents 2.5% to 3.7% - though it is noted that energy demand and supply are highly complex, and that PV plants are not on-demand facilities that always produce a predictable, dispatchable power output<sup>15</sup> (installation of a BESS would increase the reliability of energy supply from the project).

Eskom expects to retire 10 000 MW of installed thermal power generation capacity by 2030 and needs to add 40 000 to 50 000 MW of new capacity by 2037 to replace retired units and provide for South Africa's growing energy demand (Business Day, 2022) (and see Section 2.2.1). Installing alternative power sources as part of the energy mix will be critical.

The production of renewable power by the project will reduce the carbon intensity of South Africa's energy production.

Mainstream considers the proposed site to be suitable for the development of a PV plant and evacuation to the grid for the following reasons:

- *Resource availability:* The project falls within the Klerksdorp REDZ (see Figure 1-2), which was identified for the deployment of large-scale PV facilities. The annual direct natural (solar) irradiation (DNI) in the project area, at ~2 120 to 2 550 kWh/m<sup>2</sup>/annum (see Figure 3-9), is above the threshold deemed sufficient for efficient PV power generation.
- *Site extent and sensitivity:* The identified project area is sufficiently large to accommodate a up to 150 MW PV facility while avoiding known environmentally sensitive areas.
- *Topography:* The project area is largely flat and suitable for the installation of PV arrays.
- *Landowner support:* The project area is owned by very few landowners who have concluded an agreement with Mainstream and support the development. Positioning of the proposed PV facility has been undertaken in consultation with the affected landowner.
- *Site access:* The project site can be readily accessed from the N12, which minimises construction of access roads and facilitates the transportation of heavy machinery and project components during construction.
- *Grid access:* The project site is located close to two 400 kV Eskom powerlines (Hermes/Pluto 1 and 2), facilitating easy evacuation of power generated to the Eskom grid. While insufficient grid capacity is an increasing concern, the Carletonville supply area has available transformer and substation transfer capacity at all substations except Mookodi and Pluto (see Figure 3-10) (Eskom, 2021). The local grid can thus accommodate and transmit power generated at the Stilfontein Cluster.

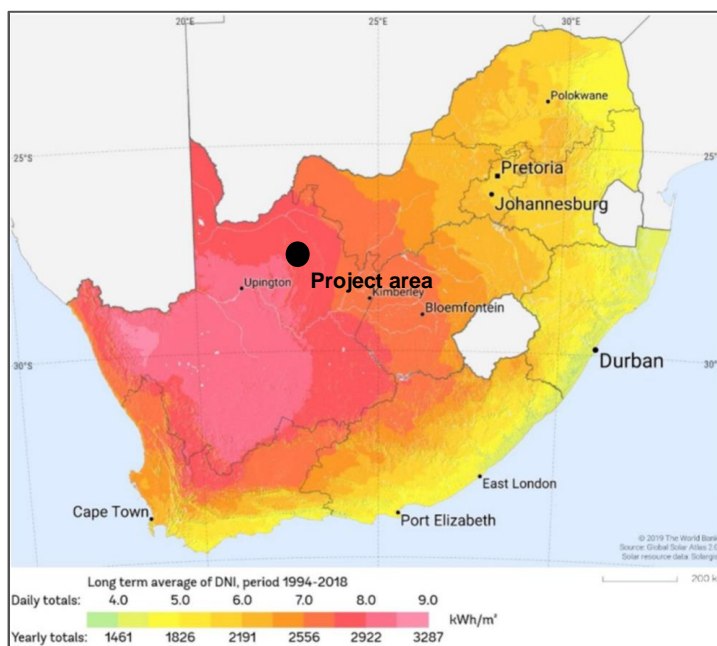
---

- Amazon's 10 MW solar project in the Northern Cape, using single-axis tracking bifacial solar modules, is expected to supply 28 GWh of renewable energy per year, or 2 800 MWh per installed MW (BusinessTech, 2021a)

It is evident that efficiency is increasing in solar plants. However, considering the less intense solar irradiation in North West Province, where the Stilfontein Cluster is located, generation capacity of ~2 200 MWh per installed MW is assumed for this project.

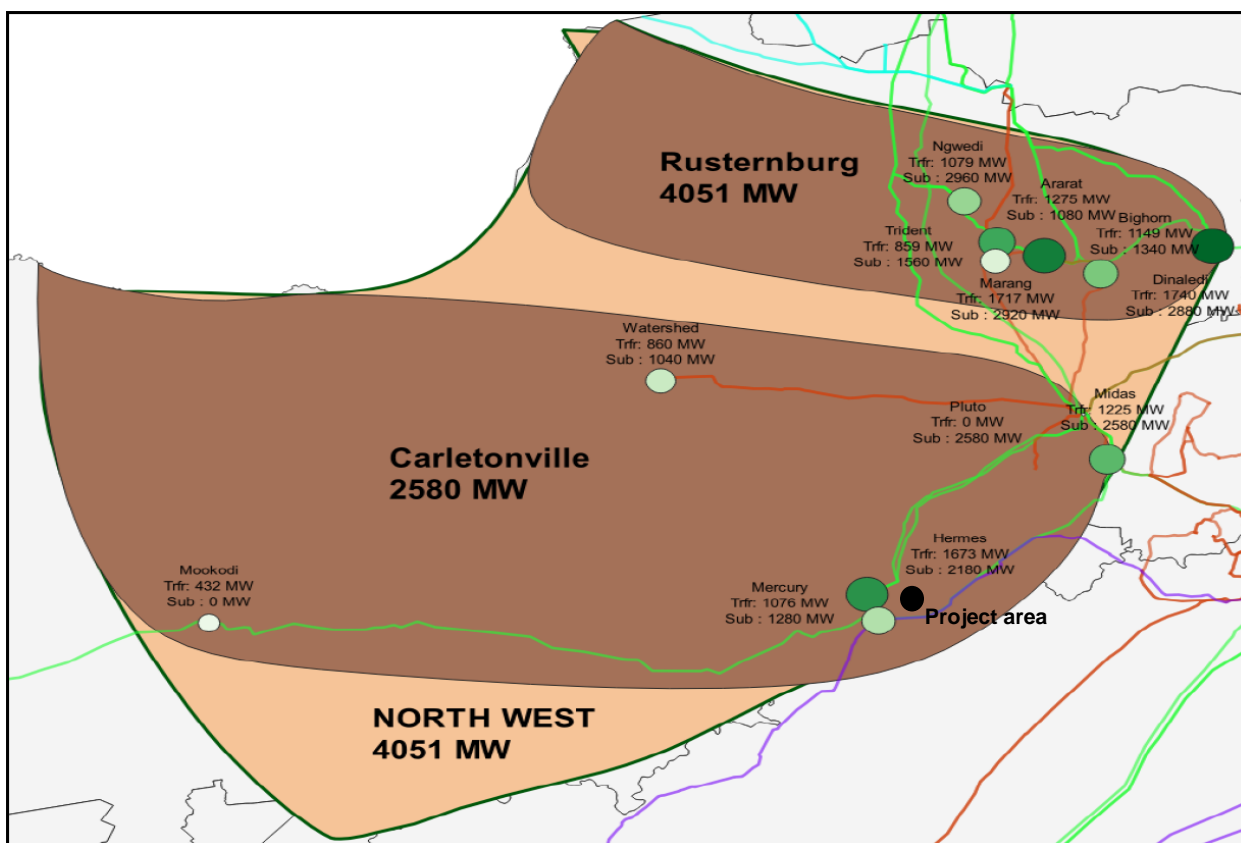
<sup>14</sup> 330 000 000 kWh x R90/kWh loadshedding impact = R30 billion; 330 000 000 kWh x R3/kWh diesel cost for power generation = R990 million.

<sup>15</sup> In mid-2022 the average capacity factor for solar PV in South Africa was 24.2, compared to 30.9 for wind and 30.6 for CSP. Wind and solar PV energy excludes curtailment (the reduction of output of a renewable resource below what it could have otherwise produced) and thus capacity factor is lower than actual wind and solar PV available (CSIR, 2022).



**Figure 3-9: Solar resource map for South Africa**

Sources: (Akinbami, Oke, & Bodunrin, 2021)



**Figure 3-10: North West substation and transformer capacity**

Sources: (Eskom, 2021)

### 3.4 Project Alternatives

Appendix 1 Section 3 (h)(i) of the EIA Regulations, 2014 requires that all BA processes must identify and describe alternatives to the proposed activity that are feasible and reasonable. Different types or categories of alternatives can be identified, e.g. location alternatives, type of activity, design or layout alternatives, technology alternatives and operational alternatives. The “No-Go” or “no development” alternative must also be considered.

Not all categories of alternatives are applicable to this project, as discussed below and summarised in Table 3-1.

**Table 3-1: Alternatives considered**

Alternative type	Alternatives considered	BAR Section	Assessed in BAR
Location	MTS location	3.5.1	Yes
	Alternative MTS location	Chapters 6 and 7.	No
Activity	Activity as described in BA	3 Chapters 6 and 7.	Yes
	No-go alternative	3.4.3 Chapters 6 and 7.	Yes

#### 3.4.1 Location Alternatives

The location of the MTS and associated powerlines is broadly determined by the location of the Stilfontein Cluster PV facilities and substations. The location of the MTS was optimised within the buildable area. The location assessed in this BA is preferred as it:

- Provides sufficient space for the MTS;
- Optimises cost and use of available space, as the MTS is centrally located between the existing 400 kV Hermes/Pluto 1 and 2 transmission lines;
- Is centrally positioned to serve all nine Stilfontein Cluster PV facilities (if developed); and
- No environmental concerns were identified at the identified location.

A wider assessment area around the MTS allows for a range of powerline tie-in options during detailed design.

#### 3.4.2 Activity Alternatives

The proposal is to generate renewable power. The project lies within the Klerksdorp REDZ (see Figure 1-2) which was specifically identified for the deployment of large-scale PV facilities. As such, there are no reasonable activity alternatives.

#### 3.4.3 The No-Go Alternative

In addition, the No-Go alternative has been considered in the BAR in accordance with the requirements of the EIA Regulations, 2014 (as amended). The No-Go alternative implies that the project does not go ahead, i.e. that no renewable energy will be generated on the site, and that current activities (notably grazing) will continue, and/or that other activities not requiring authorisation may be pursued.

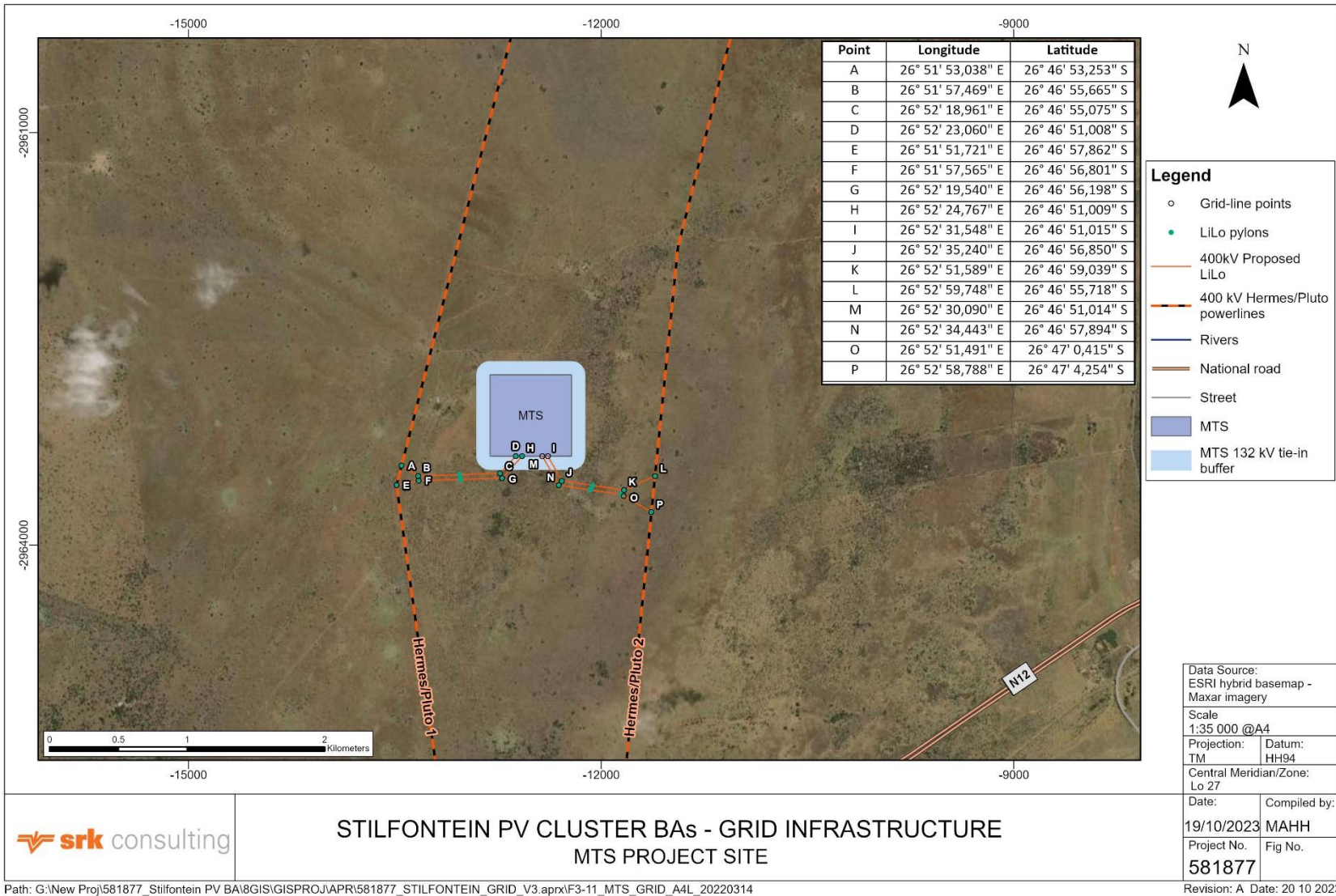


Figure 3-11: Layout of MTS project

### 3.5 MTS Infrastructure and Construction

Key aspects and components of the MTS are listed in Table 3-2, described in the sections below and shown in Figure 3-1.

**Table 3-2: Overview of MTS key components**

Infrastructure components	Description/dimension
Area occupied by inverter / transformer stations / substations	132/400 kV MTS Area: 600m x 600m Total Area: 36 ha* *MTS plus powerline tie-in within a ~60 ha MTS assessment area (formed by a ~100 m buffer around the substation to allow tie-in from any side) plus 400 kV powerline tie in located with an 215 ha overall assessment area to allow placement of the Loop in – Loop out connection at any point along the two existing Hermes/Pluto 400 kV lines)
Number of inverters required	Aspects related to required inverters and transformers, such as number and capacity, will be finalised during detailed design prior to construction, but do not materially affect project layout or project impacts
Capacity of substation	The MTS will receive incoming power from the Eskom-side of the on site substations at 132kV and will step up outgoing electricity at the MTS which will be fed into the to the Hermes-Pluto lines at 400kV via 400kV Loop-in / Loop-out lines
Area occupied by both permanent and construction laydown areas	Construction camp(s) and / or laydown area(s) will be established as required during the construction Phase. No permanent laydown areas are required. Area: ~3ha (within the 36ha total area)
Area occupied by building infrastructure	Offices Operational control centre Operation and maintenance area, warehouse and workshop Ablution facilities Lightning protection Telecommunication infrastructure (mast up to 80m) Stormwater infrastructure Sewage infrastructure Water pipelines Guard house Area: 10ha (within the 36ha total area)
Length of internal access roads	The N12 provides convenient and suitable main access to the site. Internal roads are required along the facility boundary and within the facility to allow access to installations. Existing service 'farm' roads will be used as far as possible. N12 Access to the site: ~3 km
Width of internal access roads	Access tracks not exceeding 6m in width including drainage ditches wide will be required along the corridor



	of the 400kV powerline MTS to Hermes Pluto lines: ~1km
Height of fencing	A site boundary fence up to 3m high will be installed
Type of fencing	Standard fencing (with security features as needed and where required)
Transmission lines	400 kV Loop-in / Loop-out overhead transmission lines between the MTS and existing Hermes / Pluto 1 and 2 transmission lines  Area: 6ha
Powerline capacity	400kV Loop-in / Loop-out Powerline from the MTS to the authorised grid connection infrastructure.
Powerline corridor	400kV Buffer Area (215 ha overall assessment area to allow placement of the Loop in – Loop out connection at any point along the two existing Hermes/Pluto 400 kV lines as to be required by Eskom given the highly technical nature of 400kV Loop in – Loop out connection)
Proximity to Grid Connection infrastructure	400kV Powerline length ~1km from the MTS to the Hermes Pluto overhead lines
Support Structures	Footprint measuring up to 5 x 5 m, foundations up to ~4.5 m deep
Tower Height and Span	up to 40m and average span between support structures of ~200m

The MTS will step up and despatch power generated by the Stilfontein PV Cluster facility(ies) to Eskom’s national grid. The Stilfontein PV Cluster facilities and grid connections are applied for in separate BA processes and briefly described in Section 3.1.

Some of the aspects described in the respective PV facility applications also include the MTS construction – **these are described in the PV facility applications only.**

- Workforce;
- Capital Expenditure;
- Construction timelines.

This application (and description) focuses only on the components that are exclusive to the MTS.

### 3.5.1 Project Location

The MTS and associated grid connection infrastructure is located in the JB Marks Local Municipality within DKKDM in North West Province. The project site is located approximately 13 km east of the town of Stilfontein along the N12 and forms part of the proposed, larger Stilfontein PV Cluster.

Property details for the MTS and associated transmission lines are provided in Figure 1-3.

**Table 3-3: Property details of MTS**

Property name, number and portion	SG Code	Coordinates	Property size	Development footprint
Doornplaat 3/410	T0IP00000000041000003	26°52'25.98"E, 26°47'48.70"S	951 ha	36 ha
Doornplaat RE4/410	T0IP00000000041000004	26°48'4.86"E, 26°48'4.86"S	679 ha	MTS plus powerline tie-in within a ~60 ha

Property name, number and portion	SG Code	Coordinates	Property size	Development footprint
				MTS assessment area (formed by a ~100 m buffer around the substation to allow tie-in from any side) plus 400 kV powerline tie in located with an 215 ha overall assessment area to allow placement of the Loop in – Loop out connection at any point along the two existing Hermes/Pluto 400 kV lines)

Coordinates for the MTS and associated infrastructure are provided in Figure 3-11 and Table 3-4.

**Table 3-4: Coordinates for the MTS grid connection and associated infrastructure**

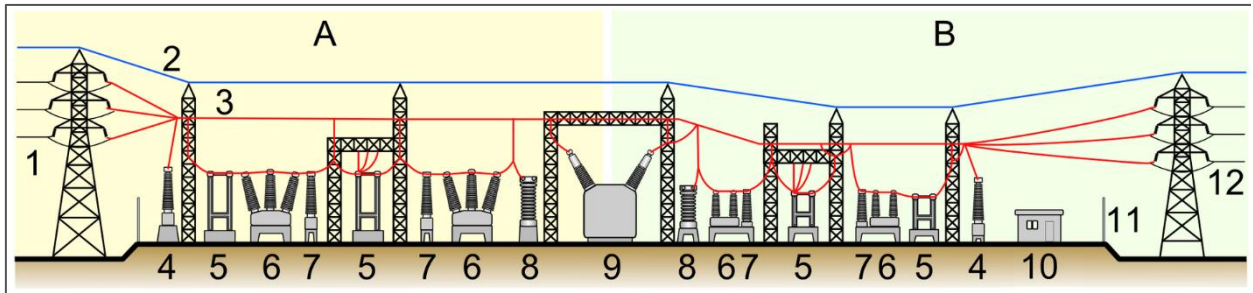
Component	Start/end or Corner point co-ordinates		
<b>MTS:</b>	Corner 1	26° 46' 31,785" S	26° 52' 16,347" E
	Corner 2	26° 46' 31,804" S	26° 52' 37,785" E
	Corner 3	26° 46' 51,021" S	26° 52' 37,764" E
	Corner 4	26° 46' 51,002" S	26° 52' 16,325" E
<b>Transmission line</b>	<b>400kV powerline from MTS to Hermes Pluto overhead lines:</b>		
	26° 46' 53,253" S	26° 51' 53,038" E	
	26° 46' 55,665" S	26° 51' 57,469" E	
	26° 46' 55,075" S	26° 52' 18,961" E	
	26° 46' 51,008" S	26° 52' 23,060" E	
	26° 46' 57,862" S	26° 51' 51,721" E	
	26° 46' 56,801" S	26° 51' 57,565" E	
	26° 46' 56,198" S	26° 52' 19,540" E	
	26° 46' 51,009" S	26° 52' 24,767" E	
	26° 46' 51,015" S	26° 52' 31,548" E	
	26° 46' 56,850" S	26° 52' 35,240" E	
	26° 46' 59,039" S	26° 52' 51,589" E	
	26° 46' 55,718" S	26° 52' 59,748" E	
	26° 46' 51,014" S	26° 52' 30,090" E	
	26° 46' 57,894" S	26° 52' 34,443" E	
	26° 47' 0,415" S	26° 52' 51,491" E	
	26° 47' 4,254" S	26° 52' 58,788" E	

### 3.5.2 MTS

#### 3.5.2.1 Background

A substation is a part of an electrical generation, transmission and distribution system. Substations transform voltage from low to high, or the reverse, or perform any of several other important functions. Between the generating station and consumer, electric power may flow through several substations to

deliver electricity at the required voltage. A substation typically include transformers to change voltage levels from low distribution voltages to high transmission voltages and/or is constructed at the interconnection of two different transmission voltages.



**Figure 3-12: Schematic of a substation**

Sources: By Shigeru23 - Own work, CC BY-SA 3.493

**Notes:** Elements of a substation include 1. Primary power lines, 2. Ground wire, 3. Overhead lines, 4. Transformer for measurement of electric voltage, 5. Disconnect switch, 6. Circuit breaker, 7. Current transformer, 8. Lightning arrester, 9. Main transformer, 10. Control building, 11. Security fence, 12. Secondary power lines

A transmission substation connects two or more transmission lines. Where all transmission lines have the same voltage, the substation contains high-voltage switches that allow lines to be connected or isolated for fault clearance or maintenance. A transmission station may have transformers to convert between two transmission voltages and equipment such as phase shifting transformers to control power flow between two adjacent power systems.

Transmission substations can range from small "switching stations" to substations that cover several hectares and include multiple voltage levels, many circuit breakers and a large amount of protection and control equipment (Wikipedia, 2021b).

### 3.5.2.2 Proposed MTS

The MTS comprises transformers / inverters (step up facility) to step up the voltage from 132 kV to 400 kV, as well as associated equipment, infrastructure and buildings.

The proposed MTS will have a development footprint of up to 36 ha (600m x 600m). It will be developed within a ~36 ha development area (shown in purple in Figure 1-3) that is buffered by a 100 m wide area around the MTS substation to accommodate 132 kV powerline tie-ins at any point around the MTS.

A total area of ~215 ha (shown in yellow in Figure 1-3, located between the two existing Hermes/Pluto 400 kV lines east and west of MTS), was assessed to allow flexibility for the alignment of the 400 kV line to Loop in – Loop out of the existing Hermes/Pluto 1 and Hermes/Pluto 2 transmission lines (see Section 3.5.3). The exact alignment will be advised by Eskom as a later stage as the required Loop in – Loop out is highly technical. The MTS will be operated and maintained by Eskom.

### 3.5.3 Transmission Lines

The facility will be connecting via a two 400kV Loop in – Loop out overhead transmission lines to the Hermes/Pluto 1 and Hermes/Pluto 2 Overhead Lines (see Figure 1-3). A Loop in – Loop out configuration is used when a new EHV substation is inserted between two existing substations.

The 400 kV overhead transmission lines will be installed on support structures (pylons). As an indication, support structures may have a footprint measuring up to 5 x 5 m, foundations up to ~4.5 m deep, height of up to 40 m and average span between support structures of ~200 m.

Final powerline design, including the number of support structures and their type, height and precise location (micro-siting), will be completed during detailed design based on environmental, geotechnical and civil engineering considerations.

Characteristics of the transmission lines connecting the MTS to the 400kV Hermes/Pluto 1 and 2 Overhead Lines are provided in Table 3-5.

**Table 3-5: Transmission line characteristics for the MTS grid connection**

Aspect	Parameter
Capacity	400 kV
Servitude width (within grid connection corridor)	55 m
Assessment corridor (for placement of transmission line)	400kV Buffer Area (215 ha overall assessment area to allow placement of the Loop in – Loop out connection at any point along the two existing Hermes/Pluto 400 kV lines as to be required by Eskom given the highly technical nature of 400kV Loop in – Loop out connection)
Length of transmission line to Hermes/Pluto 1 line	~1 km
Length of transmission line to Hermes/Pluto 2 line	~1 km
Approximate number of poles for each line	~5

### 3.5.4 Access Roads

Project components and construction equipment, such as excavators, trucks, graders, compaction equipment etc., will be transported to site by truck. Some heavy equipment will likely be defined as abnormal loads in terms of the Road Traffic Act 29 of 1989.

The MTS will make use of existing access roads wherever possible. The N12 provides access to the site. The proposed location of the main access road from the N12 to the project site is shown in the site layout plan in Figure 3-11 and the length and width of the proposed main access to the project site and internal access roads within the project site is described below.

A two-tyre service track will be created beneath the power line within the servitude to allow access to construct the pylons and for the stringing of the power line during construction, as well as for access during operations for maintenance access.

Internal roads are required along the facility boundary and within the facility to allow access to installations. Existing service ‘farm’ roads will be used as far as possible. Where new access roads are required, access roads not exceeding 12 m in width will be constructed to the project site. Internal access roads within the MTS area will not be wider than 6 m, including drainage ditches.

Vegetation will be cleared, the road will be graded and a suitable road surface material (e.g. gravel) will be used. The thickness and type of the road surface material will be dictated by *in situ* testing to assess if the material is suitable for compaction, or whether additional structural layers are required. Road surface

material will be sourced from commercial sources. Typically, internal access roads are built with a minimum of 400 mm depth of sub-grade preparation and an aggregate base layer of up to 150 mm thick (KMA, 2016).

### 3.5.5 Ancillary Support Facilities

Support facilities that will be constructed near the MTS include an operational control centre and operation and maintenance area.

Construction camp(s) and laydown area(s) occupying up to ~3 ha will be established as required in the MTS project area<sup>16</sup>. The laydown will be used for the storage of project components, building materials and equipment. If necessary, a temporary concrete batching plant will be installed to produce concrete for foundations and/or platforms. Other options include mobile batching plants that allow *in situ* batching of concrete. Aggregate, cement and sand will be imported to the site from commercial sources.

A permanent laydown area (Operation Phase) is not required.

Fuel (petrol and diesel) will be trucked to site by the Contractor and temporarily stored on site during the construction phase, in tanks and bowsers in bunded areas. The fuel tanks and bowsers will be removed from the site upon completion of the construction phase.

A standard fence (with security features as needed and where required) up to 3m high will be erected around the perimeter of the MTS. A guard house will be constructed to control site access. Up to 80m telecommunication mast and associated facilities will be installed to ensure connectivity on site.

### 3.5.6 Ground Preparation and Installation

In preparation for construction, vegetation will be cleared for:

- MTS foundations;
- Transmission line support structure (pylons / monopoles) foundations;
- Access roads;
- Laydown area; and
- Building and support infrastructure footprints.

Stripped topsoil will be stockpiled, used as fill material to level certain features, removed from site and/or spread across the site.

Vegetation in and near the transmission line servitude and substation will be trimmed, and shrubs and trees will be removed to ensure sufficient overhead clearance between vegetation and the transmission line.

Support structure (pylon) foundations for overhead transmission lines will be excavated and constructed. Structures will be assembled and erected on site, followed by the stringing of cables.

For the substation, trenching and ground grid conduit installation will be followed by casting of concrete foundations. Thereafter, substation equipment will be assembled and installed. Gravel will be placed around the substation area, and a fence erected.

### 3.5.7 Stormwater Management

Stormwater measures will be implemented on site to divert stormwater away from potentially contaminated areas such as fuel storage and waste storage and divert accidental leaks / spillages away from the natural environment.

---

<sup>16</sup> The exact location within the project development footprint will be determined during the pre-construction phase, based on a survey conducted at the time.

Measures will be implemented to ensure that stormwater originating from upgradient (stormwater that could flow across the site from external areas) is diverted around potentially contaminating areas. Also, clearly visible signage indicating emergency numbers if stormwater (or any other environmental) issues are identified, will be erected.

### 3.5.8 Water Use and Supply

Water will be required during construction for:

- Domestic use (ablutions, drinking): ~225 m<sup>3</sup> / month or ~2 700 m<sup>3</sup> / annum;
- Civil works (compaction of fill material, cement batching etc.): ~400 m<sup>3</sup> in total during construction; and
- Dust suppression on roads: ~15 l / m<sup>2</sup>, as and when needed depending on conditions.

Water will be sourced from authorised service providers and/or existing boreholes and/or abstracted from surface water sources, which will be determined during detailed design. Temporary water pipelines will be installed during construction to supply the construction camp and ancillary facilities<sup>17</sup>.

Measures to reduce water use and prevent water pollution will be implemented and specified in the EMP.

### 3.5.9 Waste and Wastewater Management

The waste hierarchy and waste management procedures will be implemented during operation to prevent, minimise or recycle waste (where possible).

Solid waste produced during the construction phase will be:

- Packaging material, including cardboard, wooden pallets and plastic wrap;
- Typical construction rubble (rock, sand, soil and concrete);
- General waste; and
- Contaminated waste such as dirty / used oil and grease and contaminated materials and soil.

Waste management during construction will be the responsibility of the contractor.

All construction waste will be removed from work areas and disposed of at licensed (municipal) waste disposal facilities. Where possible, options to reuse or recycle waste materials will be favoured over disposal. Hazardous waste will be disposed of at a licensed hazardous waste disposal facility and waste disposal manifests will be available to the competent authority upon request.

The volume of waste that will be generated cannot be estimated at this stage, but is not expected to be significant nor compromise local waste management handling and disposal. At this stage it is proposed to temporarily store less than 100 m<sup>3</sup> general and less than 80 m<sup>3</sup> hazardous waste on site at any one moment<sup>18</sup>.

Wastewater produced during the construction phase comprises contaminated runoff, wash water and domestic wastewater. Wastewater will be captured in either septic or conservancy tanks and disposed of at a suitable facility.

---

<sup>17</sup> A Water Use Authorisation, if required, will be pursued once the project has been awarded preferential bidder status and final design is underway.

<sup>18</sup> Deviations from this may require the need to obtain approval in terms of the National Environmental Waste Act 59 of 2008 (NEM:WA).

Following the completion of the construction phase, the MTS and associated transmission lines will be commissioned into operation. No physical operational activities are anticipated other than ongoing maintenance and refurbishment and replacement of equipment at the MTS and the powerline connecting to Pluto / Hermes 1 and 2 transmission lines as and when required.

Operation and maintenance of associated infrastructure and activities required for and shared with the Stilfontein PV facilities are described in the respective PV facility applications. This includes inter alia periodic maintenance of certain access roads and details of the required workforce. Other (not shared) activities are described below.

### **3.5.10 Maintenance**

Maintenance of the substation and powerlines requires periodic, planned inspection and, if necessary, repair and replacement of equipment and structures. Maintenance typically includes visual and physical inspections and monitoring of data collected by on-site meters and sensors.

Internal roads and other infrastructure will be maintained as and when required. Vegetation will be trimmed and cleared to maintain access and meet legal overhead clearance requirements.

Periodic and emergency repairs may be required. Replacement components will be delivered to site by truck and installed with appropriate equipment (e.g. mobile cranes).

### **3.5.11 Stormwater Management**

Stormwater measures will be implemented on site to divert stormwater away from potentially contaminated areas and divert accidental leaks / spillages away from the natural environment.

Measures will be implemented to ensure that stormwater originating from upgradient (stormwater that could flow across the site from external areas) is diverted around potentially contaminating areas. Also, clearly visible signage indicating emergency numbers if stormwater (or any other environmental) issues are identified, will be erected.

### **3.5.12 Water Use and Supply**

Approximately 20 m<sup>3</sup> / month (240 m<sup>3</sup> / annum) of water will be required during operation for domestic use (ablutions and drinking water). Water will be sourced from authorised registered service providers and/or existing boreholes and/or abstracted from surface water sources.

### **3.5.13 Waste Management**

The waste hierarchy and waste management procedures will be implemented during operation to prevent, minimise or recycle waste (where possible).

Solid waste produced during the operation phase will include small volumes of domestic waste, packaging from replacement equipment, discarded components and vegetation cuttings. The volume of waste that will be generated cannot be estimated at this stage but is not expected to be significant or place strain on local waste management and disposal facilities.

Waste management during operation will be the responsibility of the PV facility operator. All waste generated during maintenance and operation activities will be disposed of at appropriate licensed waste disposal facilities.

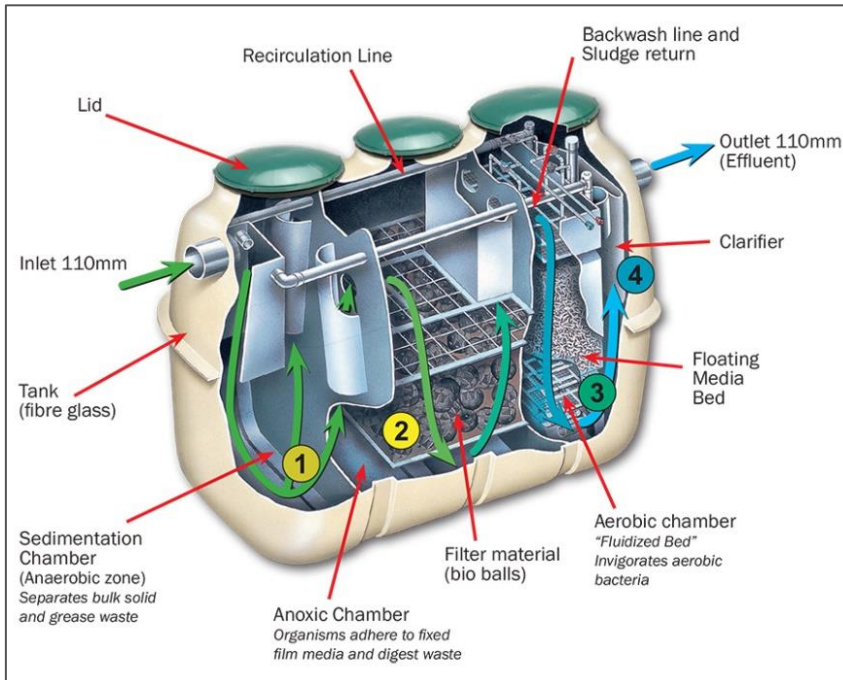
Wastewater produced during the operation phase comprises contaminated runoff, panel wash water and domestic wastewater. Wastewater will be stored in septic tanks and/or conservancy tanks and disposed of at a suitable facility. Wastewater may also be treated in a mobile wastewater treatment unit (e.g. Clarus

Fusion) designed to ensure effluent quality meets or exceeds DWS standards. Treated water can then be used for irrigation.

Waste management during operation will be the responsibility of the operator. All waste generated during maintenance and operation activities will be disposed of at appropriate licensed waste disposal facilities.

### 3.5.14 Project Lifetime

The anticipated lifetime of the MTS is 20 years minimum, with the potential option to upgrade technology to extend the lifetime of the project.



**Figure 3-13: Schematic of a wastewater treatment unit**

Sources: (Maskam Water, n.d.)

## 3.6 Decommissioning

Should the operational lifespan of the project not be extended, the project will be decommissioned.

Decommissioning involves:

- Demolishing, salvaging and/or removing substation, pylon and ancillary infrastructure;
- Excavating, salvaging and/or removing cables;
- Removing concrete foundations, to a depth deemed appropriate by a qualified specialist;
- Ripping compacted sections of the site; and
- Rehabilitating, i.e. profiling and revegetating the site.

Decommissioning activities will comply with the legislation applicable at the time. It is expected that the project area will revert to its current land-use (grazing) once the MTS facility has been decommissioned.



In agreement with the landowner, some project components may be left in place if useful to the landowner. Any other components will be removed from the site and either re-sold, recycled or disposed of at a suitable licensed disposal facility.

REIPPPP bidders must make financial provision for decommissioning of their facility, rehabilitation and closure of the project site and the post-closure monitoring of environmental impacts in respect of the facility upon the termination of the PPA, whatever the cause of the termination. Decommissioning funds may be built up over time during operation (DMRE, 2021).

## 4 Description of the Affected Environment

This chapter presents an overview of the biophysical and socio-economic environment in which the proposed project is located to:

- Understand the general sensitivity of and pressures on the affected environment;
- Inform the identification of potential issues and impacts associated with the proposed project; and
- Start conceptualising practical mitigation measures.

The components of the baseline provided in Sections 4.1 to 4.5 have been generated based on those provided by specialists appointed to undertake baseline and impact assessments for the proposed project. The specialist baseline and impact studies undertaken for the BA process are listed in Table 4-1.

**Table 4-1: Specialist baseline studies undertaken for the BA**

Specialist Study	Specialists	Organisation
Freshwater	Andrew Husted Martinus Erasmus	The Biodiversity Company
Terrestrial Biodiversity	Andrew Husted Martinus Erasmus	The Biodiversity Company
Avifauna	Chris van Rooyen Albert Froneman	Chris van Rooyen Consulting
Soil and Land Capability	Andrew Husted Martinus Erasmus	The Biodiversity Company
Socio-Economic	Sue Reuther	SRK
Archaeology, Palaeontology and Heritage	Jaco van der Walt Prof. Marion Bamford	Beyond Heritage
Visual	Kelly Armstrong	SRK

Specialist studies are attached as Appendix D.1 to Appendix D.7 and provide additional detail.

### 4.1 Biophysical Environment

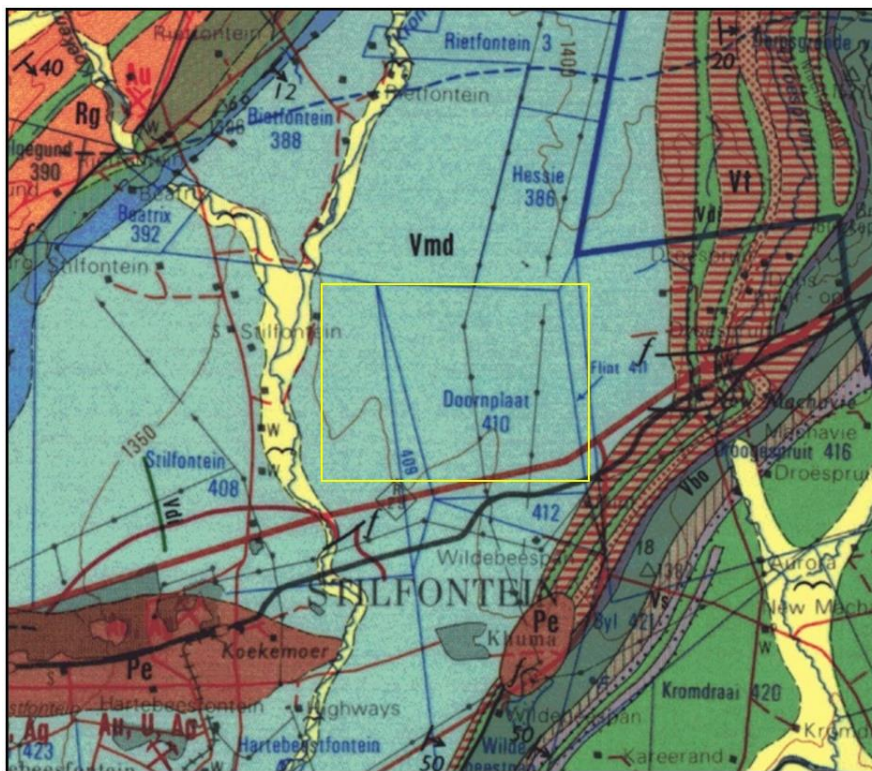
#### 4.1.1 Geology and Topography

Geologically the project area lies in the southwestern part of the Transvaal Basin where rocks of the Transvaal Supergroup, more specifically dolomites and limestones of the Malmani Subgroup (Vmd), are exposed. The Malmani Subgroup is subdivided into five formations, with the top of the Chuniespoort Group forming the Penge Formation and the Duitschland Formation. The Chuniespoort Group was formed by the first of three major cycles of basin infill and tectonic activity. The second cycle deposited the lower Pretoria Group, and the sediments in the project area derive from the interim lowstand that preceded the third cycle. These sediments were deposited in shallow lacustrine, alluvial fan and braided stream environments. Outcrops of quartzite 'koppies' are evident across the site, along with areas of exposed dolomite (see Figure 4-1) (Beyond Heritage, 2022). Dolomite gradually dissolves in water, which gives rise to cave systems and voids in the rock, creating potential for sinkholes and subsidence. The Council for Geoscience confirmed that no sinkholes have formed within the project area (GaGE Consulting, 2022).

According to the Seismic Hazard Map of South Africa (SANS 10160-4, 2010), the site has a peak ground acceleration of ~0.2 g<sup>19</sup> and lies within seismic hazard Zone II, Class 2 (regions of mine-induced and natural seismic activity) (GaGE Consulting, 2022).

Although the site is located near the Klerksdorp goldfields (also known as the Klerksdorp-Orkney-Stilfontein-Hartebeesfontein [KOSH] area) and Stilfontein mining area, the site does not fall within the Stilfontein Mine lease and no deep and documented mine shafts underlie the site (GaGE Consulting, 2022). In a preliminary geotechnical study for the project, (GaGE Consulting, 2022) concluded that undermining will not pose any fatal flaws to the proposed development at this stage.

Topographically the project area lies in the western portion of South Africa’s highveld, which primarily consists of rolling plains. The Stilfontein Cluster site topography is fairly uniform and elevation ranges slightly from ~1 380 m above mean sea level (amsl) in the north to ~1340 m in the south near the N12. Gently undulating topography to the northeast and northwest of the sites rises to ~1 500 m amsl (see Figure 4-2) (SRK Consulting, 2022a) (The Biodiversity Company, 2022a).



**Figure 4-1: Geology of the project area (yellow rectangle)**

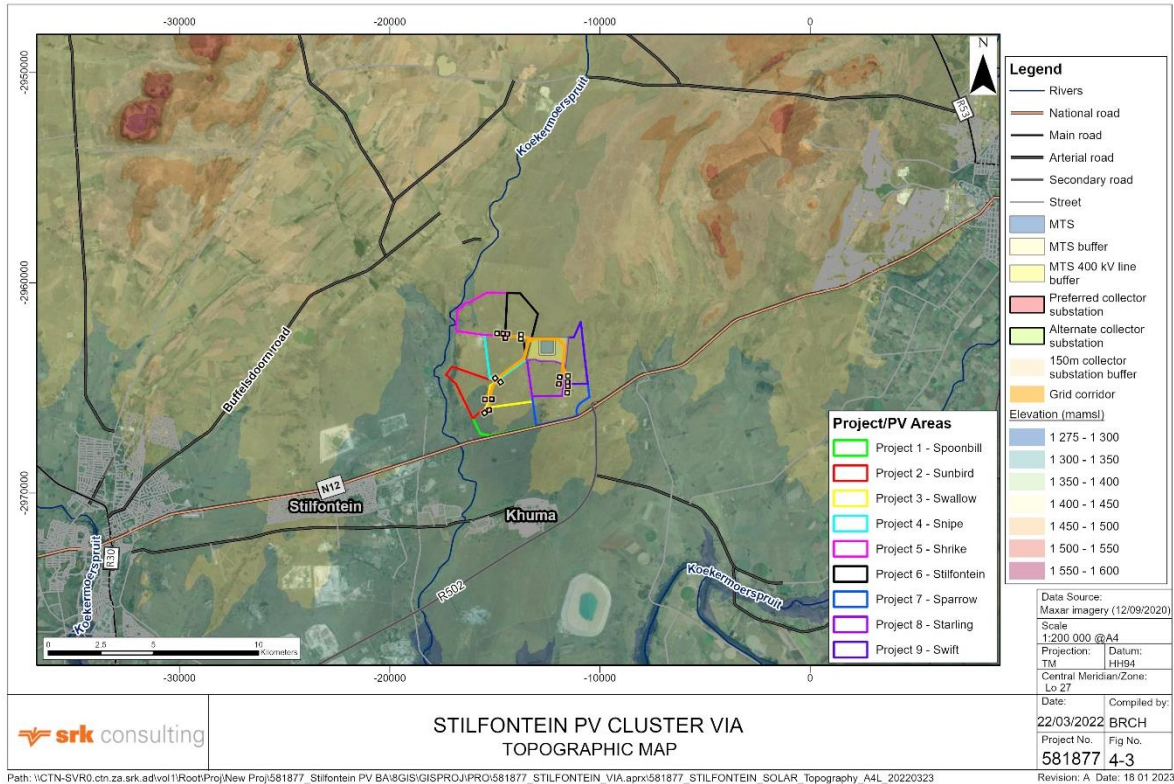
Sources: (Beyond Heritage, 2022)

Notes: **Vmd** denotes Dolomite, chert and remnants of chert breccia of the Rooihogte Formation

Slope gradients vary, as the ground is undulating, but average slope is ~1 to 2 degrees, with localised slopes of up to 4 degrees (and less than 1:10, equivalent to 5.7 degrees) (see Figure 4-3). Isolated outcrops of chert and dolomite are located in the area (GaGE Consulting, 2022).

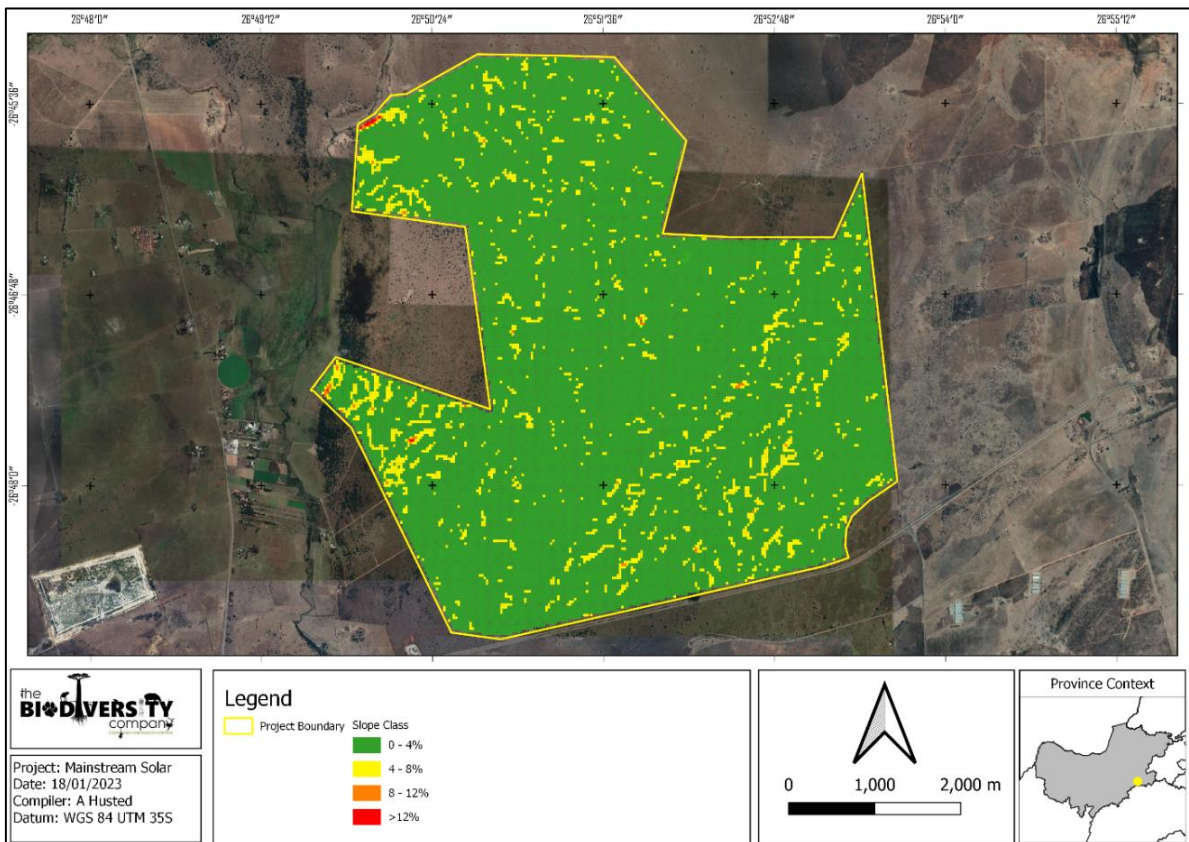
The general site drainage is anticipated to occur towards the Koekemoerspruit River to the west of the site which flows in a southerly direction into the Vaal River. The site drainage will occur as overland surface flow and shallow subsurface flow and convergence into lower lying areas across the site.

<sup>19</sup> The peak ground acceleration may be described as the maximum acceleration of the ground shaking during an earthquake, which has a 10% probability of being exceeded in a 50-year period.



**Figure 4-2: Project area topography**

Source: (SRK Consulting, 2022a)



**Figure 4-3: Slopes in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022a)

Note: A slope of 4% = 2.29 degrees, 8% = 5.57 degrees, 12% = 6.84 degrees.

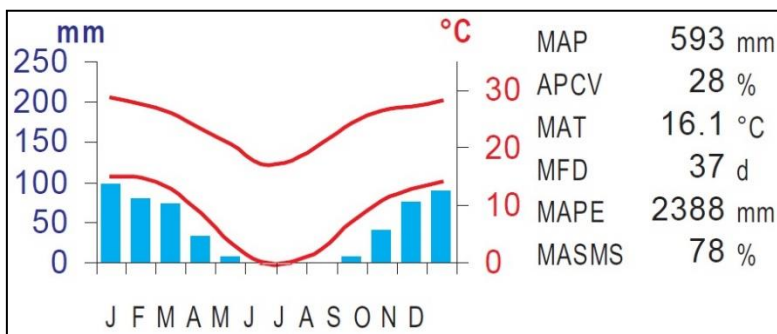
### 4.1.2 Climate

The study area falls within the Cwa (temperate, dry winter, hot summer) and BSk (cold arid steppe) climate subtypes of the Warm Temperate Climate and Tropical and Subtropical Steppe Climate, respectively, as classified by the Köppen Climate Classification system. The site experiences moderate to hot summers and cold and dry winters with some frost at night.

Temperatures range between an average annual minimum of 10°C and an average annual maximum of 23°C. The coldest months are June and July, while January is the hottest with minimum temperature of 16°C and maximum temperature of 32°C (Figure 4-4 and Figure 4-5).

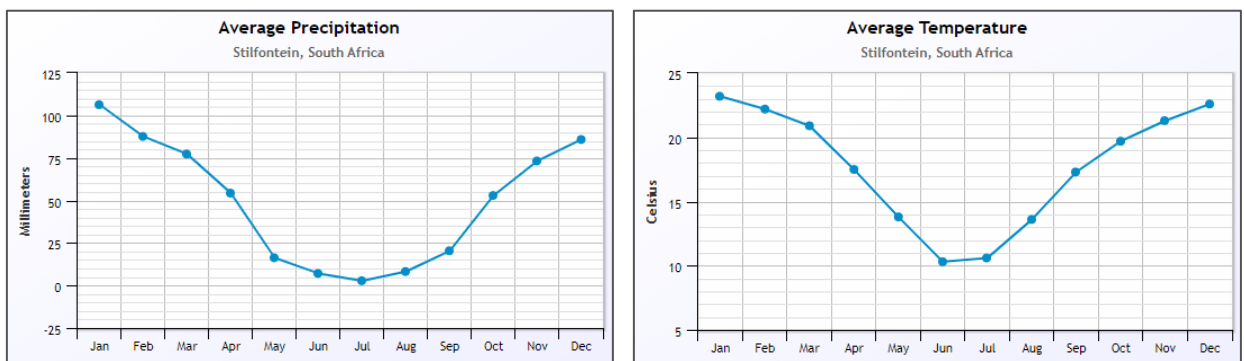
Mean annual rainfall in the region is 593 mm, which correlates well with the 592 mm mean annual precipitation measured in Stilfontein since 1910 (Figure 4-5). Rain occurs predominantly in the form of thunderstorms and mostly between November and March. Humidity is moderate at approximately 56% ([www.weatherbase.com](http://www.weatherbase.com)).

Wind is predominantly northerly, with wind speeds exceeding 5 m/s ~51% of the time in summer and 36% of the time in winter (WeatherSpark, 2022).



**Figure 4-4: Climatic characteristics of the project region**

Sources: (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006)



**Figure 4-5: Average monthly precipitation (left) and temperature (right) in Stilfontein, 1910-2022**

Sources: [www.weatherbase.com](http://www.weatherbase.com)

### 4.1.3 Soils and Land Capability

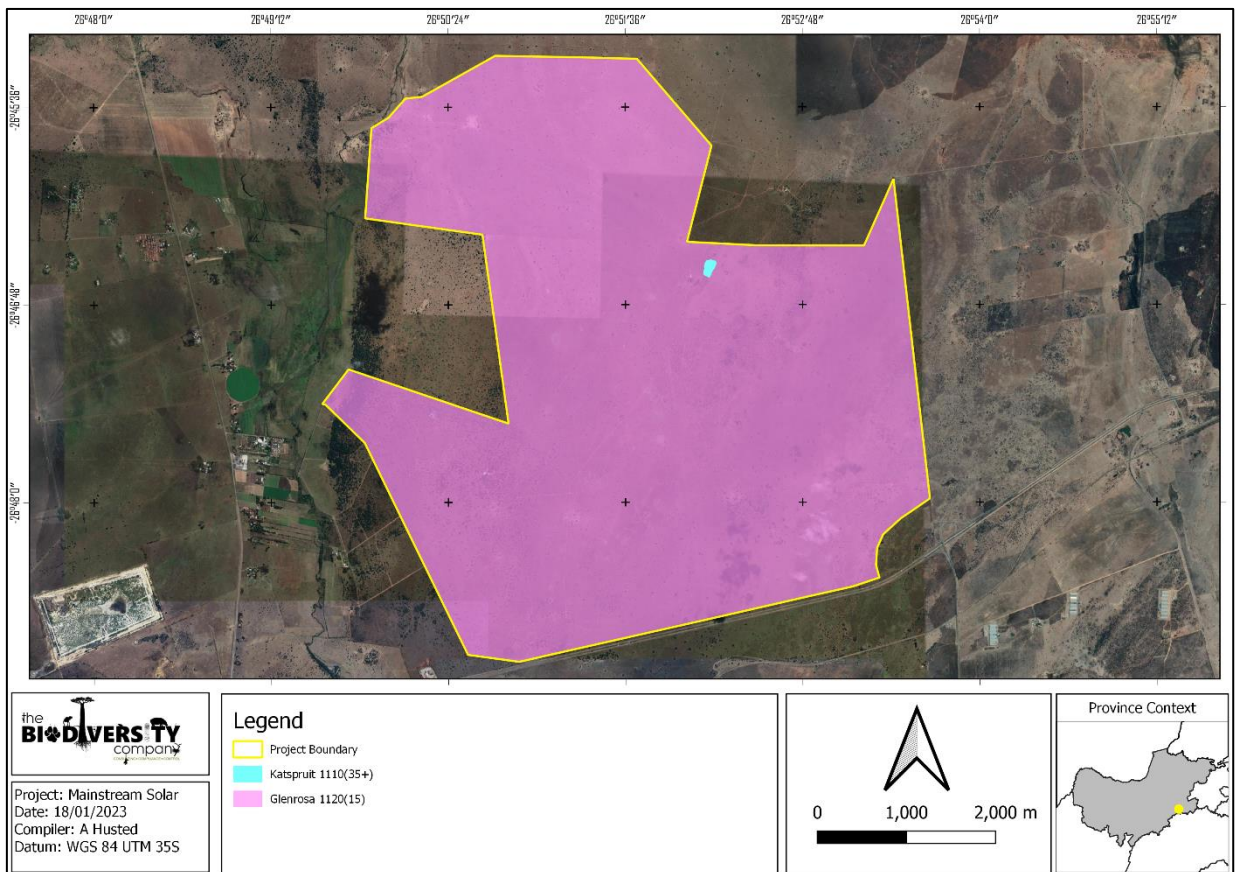
Agricultural potential, or land capability, is determined by soil, terrain and climate characteristics and reflects the most intensive long-term use of land under rain-fed conditions (The Biodiversity Company, 2022a).

Soil profile analysis revealed four diagnostic horizons or layers, including orthic topsoil, lithocutanic horizon, red apedal horizon and gley horizon. The project area is predominantly characterised by the dark geolithic Glenrosa soil form (Figure 4-6). The project area is relatively flat, with slopes primarily below 5%

(see Section 4.1.1). The area has a climatic capability class of C8, which indicates very severe limitations, i.e. very severe restrictions in the choice of crops due to heat and moisture stress. Suitable crops are at high risk of yield loss.

As a result of the above factors, the project area is of land capability Class VI (limitations preclude cultivation, suitable for perennial vegetation), with an HGM 1 depression wetland categorised as land capability Class V (water course and land with wetness limitations). Either class is suitable for grazing and has low (agricultural) sensitivity.

Due to poor climatic and land capability, the agricultural potential of the entire area is classified as L7<sup>20</sup>, which means it has low agricultural potential, severe limitations due to soil, slope, temperatures or rainfall and is non-arable (The Biodiversity Company, 2022a).



**Figure 4-6: Soil types in the Stilfontein Cluster project area<sup>21</sup>**

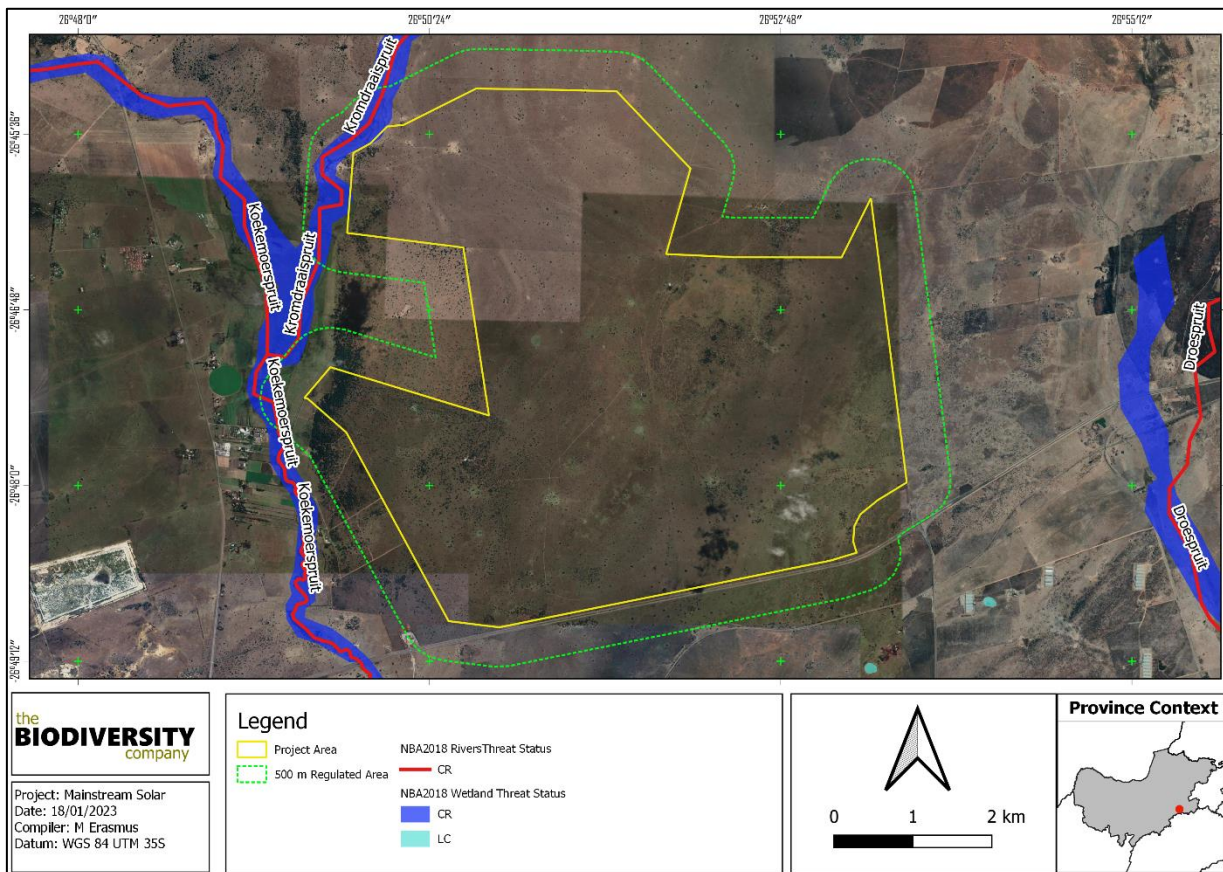
Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022a)

#### 4.1.4 Wetlands

The Stilfontein Cluster site lies between the Kromdraaispruit and Koekemoerspruit rivers to the west and the Droespruit River to the east. Floodplain wetlands in these rivers are categorised as Critically Endangered in the 2018 National Biodiversity Assessment (NBA). The project area is within 500 m of the Critically Endangered Kromdraaispruit and Koekemoerspruit Rivers, with no overlap with these Rivers. The project area slightly overlaps with Critically Endangered floodplain wetlands (Figure 4-7) (The Biodiversity Company, 2022b). The Stilfontein Cluster does not overlie any Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (FEPAs).

<sup>20</sup> The HGM 1 depression wetland is categorised as Vlei.

<sup>21</sup> The Vaalbos soil form was not delineated due to the small extent of the soil form.



**Figure 4-7: Ecosystem threat status of river and wetland ecosystems in the 500 m regulated area of the Stilfontein Cluster**

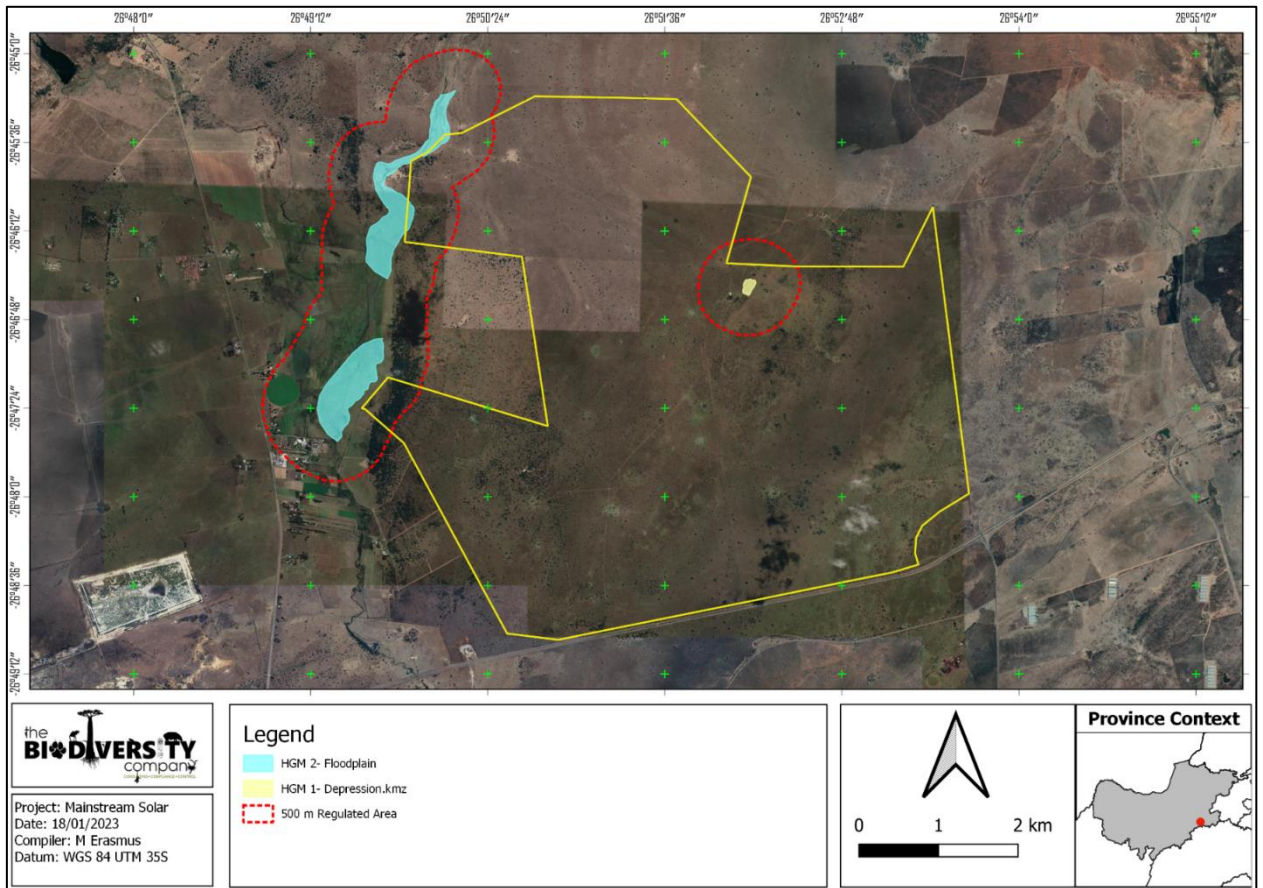
Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

Two wetland units are located within the Stilfontein Cluster including the 500 regulated area: a depression wetland (HGM 1) close to the centre of the Stilfontein Cluster (see Figure 4-8 and Figure 4-9) and a floodplain wetland (HGM 2) outside the north-western Cluster boundary (see Figure 4-8 and Figure 4-10). Both wetlands support hydrophytic and facultative wetland species such as *Cyperus* spp. (including *C. dives*) and *Schoenoplectus* spp. Some alien vegetation is also present.

The depression wetland (HGM 1) is fed by runoff from the surrounding topography and to some extent by lateral sub-surface flows. The dominant soil form of the depression wetland is the Mispah soil form. The ecosystem function and service provision was assessed as low. The wetland provides a number of ecosystem services, including carbon storage, biodiversity maintenance and (potentially) tourism and recreation. The Present Ecological State (PES) is Category C (moderately modified), with an overall score of 2.5.

The floodplain wetland (HGM 2) is fed by overflows from the stream channel banks along with lateral seepage with orthic mineral topsoil overlaid on gleyic horizons of the Katspruit form. The wetland provides a number of ecosystem services, including biodiversity maintenance, stream flow regulation and water for human use. The ecosystem function and service provision of the floodplain was assessed to be moderate to moderately high due to its ability to regulate stream flow and trap sediment. The PES is Category C (moderately modified), with an overall score of 3.8 and hydrology PES only at Category D.

Grazing and trampling by livestock in the floodplain and historic agricultural activities within the catchment have lowered the PES. Both wetlands have a low Ecological Importance and Sensitivity rating.



**Figure 4-8: Hydrogeomorphic units within the 500 m regulated area in the Stilfontein Cluster area**

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022b)



**Figure 4-9: Depression wetland HGM 1, showing wetland centre (A) and wetland outskirts with hydrophytes (B)**

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022b)





**Figure 4-10: Floodplain wetland HGM 2, showing downstream (left) and upstream (right) of the portion located within the 500 m of the Stilfontein Cluster**

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022b)

### 4.1.5 Terrestrial Ecology

The North West Province supports grassland and savanna vegetation. The project area falls within the Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion, which is reminiscent of African savannah landscapes as it comprises grasses and low shrubby vegetation with small clusters of trees and bushes. Approximately 30% of the biome has been transformed by cultivation, forestry, urbanisation and mining (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006). The biome flora is not particularly species rich compared to other South African biomes and contains few endemic species. There are few floral and faunal Species of Conservation Concern (SCC) in the region and is considered Least Concern (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c) (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Natural disturbances that drive vegetation dynamics in the region aside from agricultural grazing include grazing by wild herbivores, fire, rainfall and runoff (which causes erosion). Fire events in the grassland biome are frequent, but recovery is generally fast. High intensity rainfall events coupled with low vegetation cover can result in sheet erosion (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006) (READ, 2015).

#### 4.1.5.1 Vegetation

Open woodland with a prominent grassy component is the dominant habitat type in the Stilfontein Cluster project area (Figure 4-11). The woodland consists of mainly fine-leaved, semi-deciduous *Vachellia*-dominated shrubs and medium-sized trees with shrub / tree density ranging from relatively dense in places to open tracts of grassland with scattered shrubs (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022). The dominant vegetation consists of grassland-woodland vegetation with dolomite extrusions and prominent rocky ridges (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c).

The habitat in most of the project area is degraded (see Figure 4-11) due to historic overgrazing and other agricultural practices. While the area is not entirely transformed, ongoing disturbance prevents recovery of these areas to a more natural state.

The rocky ridge located in the southern portion of the Stilfontein Cluster area functions as a micro-habitat for small faunal species such as the Cape Rock Hyrax (*Procavia capensis*) and is regarded as sensitive.

The Stilfontein Cluster project area overlaps widely with areas classified as ESA1, with less extensive

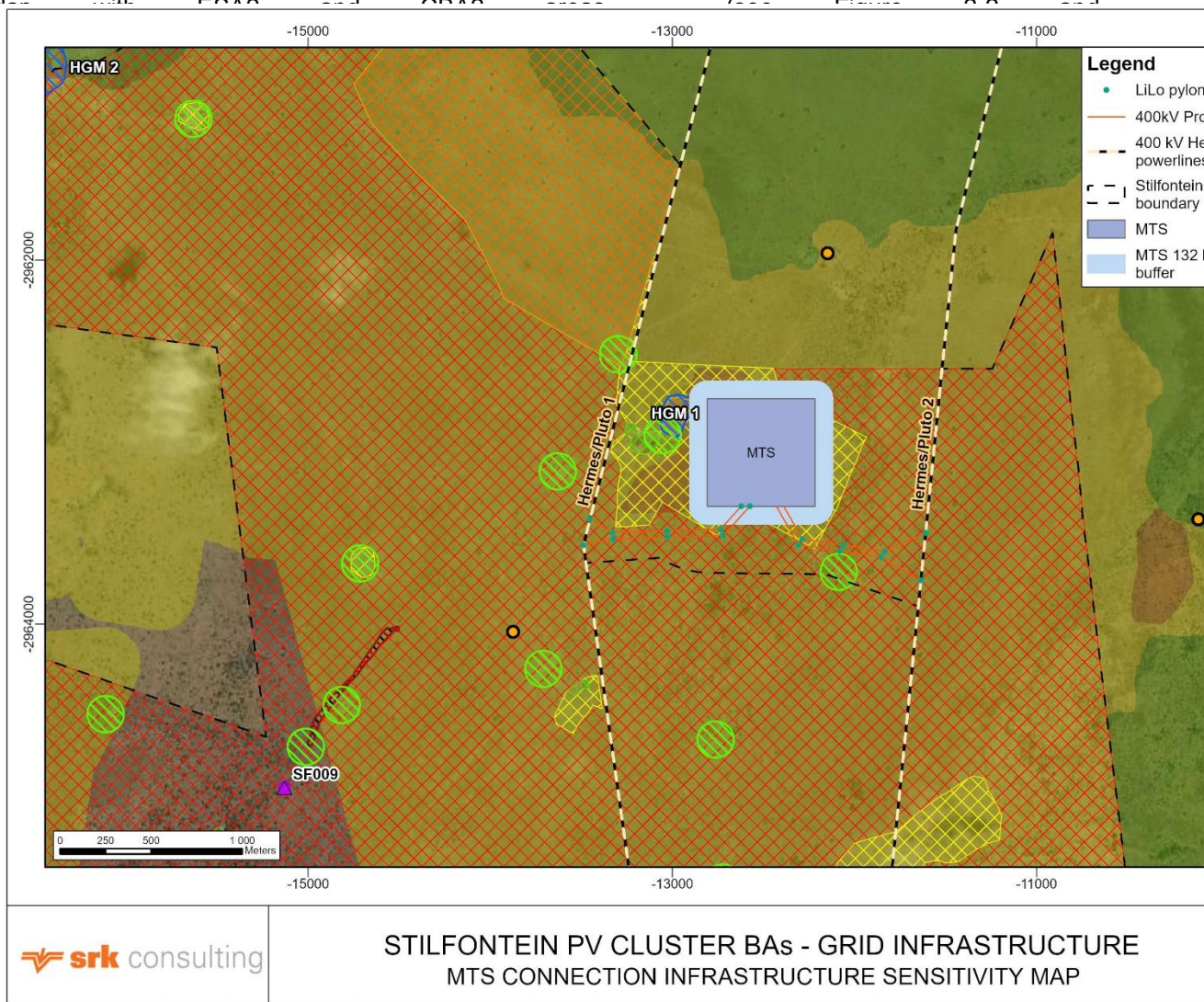


Figure 7-1).





**Figure 4-11: Habitat type of the project area: open woodland (top), degraded grassland (middle) and rocky outcrop (bottom)**

Source: (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022) (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

Vegetation structure of the Stilfontein Cluster project area is predominantly Vaal Reefs Dolomite Sinkhole Woodland, with Carletonville Dolomite Grassland in the north-east. Vaal Reefs Dolomite Sinkhole Woodland (Gh 12) vegetation occurs at altitudes ranging from 1 280 to 1 380 m amsl, in slightly undulating plains dissected by rocky chert ridges. Vegetation consists of small trees, low and tall shrubs and graminoids. Dominant species includes *Vachellia* (formerly *Acacia*) spp., *Asparagus* spp., *Commelina africana*, *Aristida congesta*, *Digitaria eriantha* and *Eragrostis* spp. Dolomite Sinkhole Woodland is **vulnerable** and ~25% of its original extent has been transformed by mining, cultivation, urban sprawl and infrastructure (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Carletonville Dolomite Grassland (Gh 15) vegetation is mainly found in the North West, and to some extent in Gauteng and Free State Province. Carletonville Dolomite Grassland occurs in undulating plains dissected by rocky chert ridges. Vegetation consists mainly of graminoids and also includes herbs, geophytic herbs, low shrubs and geoxyllic suffrutices. Dominant species include *A. congesta*, *Brachiaria serrata*, *Cynodon dactylon*, and *Eragrostis* spp. The succulent shrub *Delosperma davyi* is found only in this vegetation type.

Carletonville Dolomite Grassland is classified as **vulnerable** and ~25% of its original extent has been transformed by cultivation, urban sprawl, mining and the construction of the Boskop and Klerkskraal Dams (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

A total of 111 floral species were recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster project area, of which three are endemic (*Crabbea angustifolia*, *Ehretia rigida* and *Gladiolus permeabilis*). Five invasive alien plants, listed as NEMBA Category 1b, were recorded, with 7 listed as naturalized exotics. The remaining 96 plants are indigenous species, classified as Least Concern. Some of the recorded species are shown in Figure 4-12, while a complete list of recorded species is provided in Appendix D.2.

Camel Thorn trees (*Vachellia erioloba*, see Figure 4-13) are the only SCC and recorded throughout the project area. Camel thorn trees are protected under the National Forests Act 84 of 1998. The density of Camel Thorn trees varies across the Stilfontein Cluster area. The total number of Camel Thorn trees in the Stilfontein Cluster area exceeds 500<sup>22</sup>.

#### 4.1.5.2 Fauna

##### 4.1.5.2.1 Herpetofauna

Twenty (20) amphibian and forty-three (43) reptile species are expected to occur in the Stilfontein Cluster. The only amphibian SCC that is expected to occur in the project area is the Near-Threatened Giant Bullfrog (*Pyxicephalus adspersus*). One reptilian SCC (the Vulnerable Cape sand snake – *Psammophis leightoni*) has a low likelihood of occurrence in the project area.

Five reptilian and three amphibian species were recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster (Table 4-2). None of these species are regarded as threatened.

---

<sup>22</sup> Not all trees would need to be removed for the project. Impacted trees will be identified during the detailed design phase. An Application for a Licence Regarding Protected Trees needs to be lodged in terms of Section 15(1) of the National Forest Act 84 of 1998 for the cutting, disturbing, damaging or destruction of any protected tree.



**Figure 4-12: Selected flora species recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

**Notes:** A) *Senecio inornatus*, B) *Boophone disticha*, C) *Crabbea angustifolia*, D) *Harpagophytum procumbens*, E) *Delosperma herbeum* and F) *Gladiolus permeabilis*



**Figure 4-13: Camelthorn trees in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

**Table 4-2: Herpetofauna species recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

Species	Common Name	Conservation Status	
		Regional (SANBI, 2016)	IUCN (2021)
Reptiles			
<i>Acanthocercus atricollis</i>	Southern Tree Agama	LC	LC
<i>Lygodactylus capensis</i>	Cape dwarf gecko	LC	LC
<i>Trachylepis punctatissima</i>	Speckled Rock Skink	LC	LC
<i>Pachydactylus capensis</i>	Cape Gecko	LC	Unlisted
<i>Pelomedusa galeata</i>	South African Marsh Terrapin	Not evaluated	Unlisted
Amphibians			
<i>Amietia fuscigula</i>	Common River Frog	LC	LC
<i>Cacosternum boettgeri</i>	Common Caco	LC	LC
<i>Kassina senegalensis</i>	Bubbling Kassina	LC	LC

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)



**Figure 4-14: Selected reptiles recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

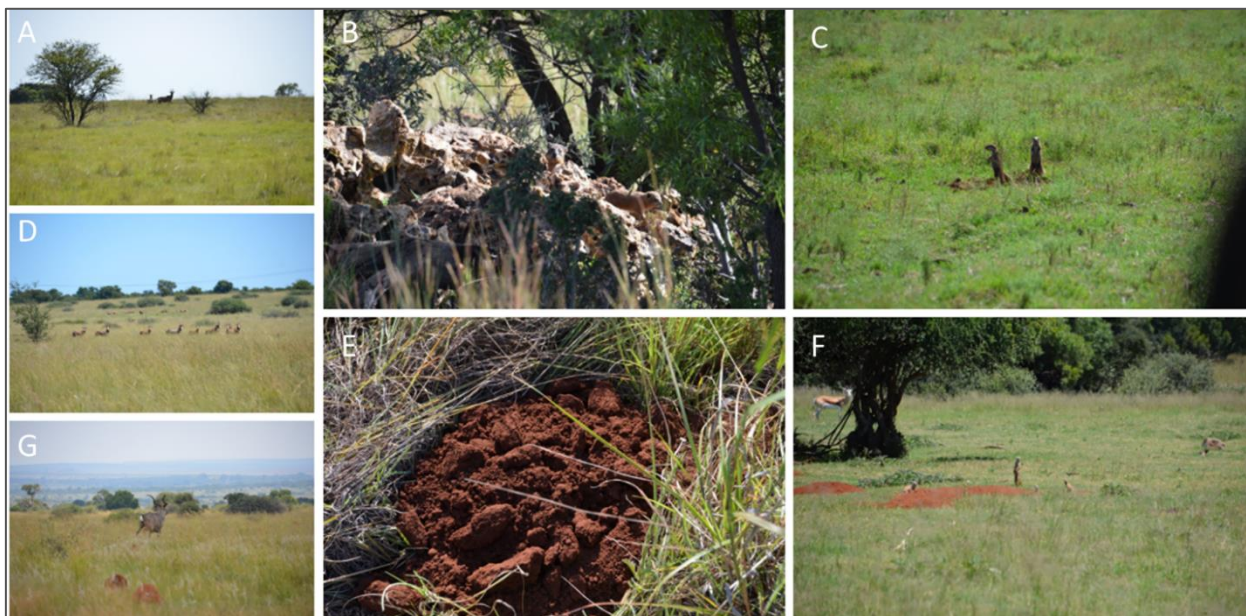
Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

**Notes:** A) Cape Gecko (*Pachydactylus capensis*), B) South African Marsh Terrapin (*Pelomedusa galeata*)

**4.1.5.2.2 Mammals**

Large herds of indigenous migratory ungulates and predators once roamed the Highveld. While these have now been mostly replaced by ‘captive’ species on game farms, a number of medium to large mammal species are still known to occur in the project area. These include Greater Kudu, Springbok, Duiker, Black-backed Jackal, Steenbok, Aardwolf and Vervet Monkey. ‘Captive’ species only observed on game farms in the cluster project area include Impala, Red Hartebeest, Blue Wildebeest, Common Waterbuck, Common Eland and the near-threatened Plains Zebra (Figure 4-15).

Several smaller mammal species were observed, including *Cynictis penicillata* (Yellow Mongoose), Shrub Hare (*Lepus saxatilis*) and Southern African Ground Squirrel (*Xerus inauris*). The rocky outcrops are microhabitats frequented by many of the observed rodent species recorded (Figure 4-15).



**Figure 4-15: Selected mammal species observed in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

**Notes:** A) Red Hartebeest (*Alcelaphus buselaphus caama*), B) Cape Rock Hyrax (*Procavia capensis*), C) South African Ground Squirrel (*Xerus inauris*), D) Blesbok (*Damaliscus pygargus*), E) Southern African Mole-rat (*Cryptomys hottentotus*) and F) Meerkat (*Suricata suricatta*) & Springbok (*Antidorcas marsupialis*) and G) Greater Kudu (*Tragelaphus strepsiceros*).

Thirteen mammal SCC are expected to occur in the project area (Table 4-3), of which five have a moderate to high likelihood of occurrence based on the suitability of habitat and availability of food sources. These include Southern African Hedgehog (*Atelerix frontalis*), African White-tailed Rat (*Mystromys albicaudatus*), Serval (*Leptailurus serval*), Southern African Vlei Rat (Grassland type) (*Otomys auratus*) and the Brown Hyena (*Parahyaena brunnea*). None of these species were directly or indirectly observed in the project area.

**Table 4-3 Mammal species of conservation concern expected to occur in the Stilfontein Cluster**

Species	Common Name	Conservation Status	
		Regional (SANBI, 2016)	IUCN (2021)
<i>Aonyx capensis</i>	African Clawless Otter	NT	NT
<i>Atelerix frontalis</i>	Southern African Hedgehog	NT	LC
<i>Crocidura maquassiensis</i>	Makwassie musk shrew	VU	LC
<i>Crocidura mariquensis</i>	Swamp Musk Shrew	NT	LC
<i>Eidolon helvum</i>	African Straw-coloured Fruit Bat	LC	NT
<i>Felis nigripes</i>	Black-footed Cat	VU	VU
<i>Hydriectis maculicollis</i>	Spotted-necked Otter	VU	NT
<i>Leptailurus serval</i>	Serval	NT	LC
<i>Mystromys albicaudatus</i>	African White-tailed Rat	VU	EN
<i>Otomys auratus</i>	Southern African Vlei Rat (Grassland type)	NT	NT
<i>Panthera pardus</i>	Leopard	VU	VU
<i>Parahyaena brunnea</i>	Brown Hyaena	NT	NT
<i>Poecilogale albinucha</i>	African Striped Weasel	NT	LC

Source: (The Biodiversity Company, 2022c)

#### 4.1.5.2.3 Avifauna

The project area does not lie within or near an Important Bird Area or a Protected Area. The closest Important Bird Area is the Sandveld and Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserves (IBA SA039) ~102 km south-west of the site. The Faan Meintjies Private Nature Reserve lies ~10 km west of the project site, and the project is not expected to impact on either (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022).

The habitat type (open woodland), presence of surface water and of overhead powerlines determines the type of birds expected in the area. Artificial impoundments (including cement water troughs and reservoirs) are important water sources for birds. Several species also utilise the impoundments as habitat and hunting grounds and for bathing and drinking. More than 210 species are expected to occur within the broader area, 23 of these are considered powerline priority species<sup>23</sup> (see Table 4-4).

**Table 4-4: Avifauna priority species likely to occur in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

Species	Common Name
<i>Falco amurensis</i>	Amur Falcon
<i>Ardea melanocephala</i>	Black-headed Heron
<i>Elanus caeruleus</i>	Black-winged Kite
<i>Vanellus armatus</i>	Blacksmith Lapwing
<i>Zosterops virens</i>	Cape White-eye
<i>Cisticola textrix</i>	Cloud Cisticola
<i>Buteo buteo</i>	Common Buzzard
<i>Alopochen aegyptiaca</i>	Egyptian Goose
<i>Melaenornis silens</i>	Fiscal Flycatcher
<i>Micronisus gabar</i>	Gabar Goshawk
<i>Falco rupicoloides</i>	Greater Kestrel
<i>Bostrychia hagedash</i>	Hadada Ibis
<i>Numida meleagris</i>	Helmeted Guineafowl
<i>Turdus smithi</i>	Karoo Thrush
<i>Falco biarmicus</i>	Lanner Falcon
<i>Falco naumanni</i>	Lesser Kestrel
<i>Afrotis afraoides</i>	Northern Black Korhaan
<i>Corvus albus</i>	Pied Crow
<i>Lamprotornis bicolor</i>	Pied Starling
<i>Petrochelidon spilodera</i>	South African Cliff Swallow
<i>Bubo africanus</i>	Spotted Eagle-Owl
<i>Bubulcus ibis</i>	Western Cattle Egret
<i>Gyps africanus</i>	White-backed Vulture

Source: (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022)

Even though the project area contains marginal habitat for several SCC, the Critically Endangered White-backed Vulture (*Gyps africanus*) is the only SCC recorded in the Stilfontein Cluster area, recorded roosting

<sup>23</sup> Powerline priority species are defined as species which could potentially be impacted by powerline collisions or electrocutions, based on their morphology. Larger birds, particularly raptors and vultures, are more vulnerable to electrocution as they are more likely to bridge the clearances between electrical components than smaller birds. Large terrestrial species and certain waterbirds with high wing loading are less manoeuvrable than smaller species and are therefore more likely to collide with overhead lines.



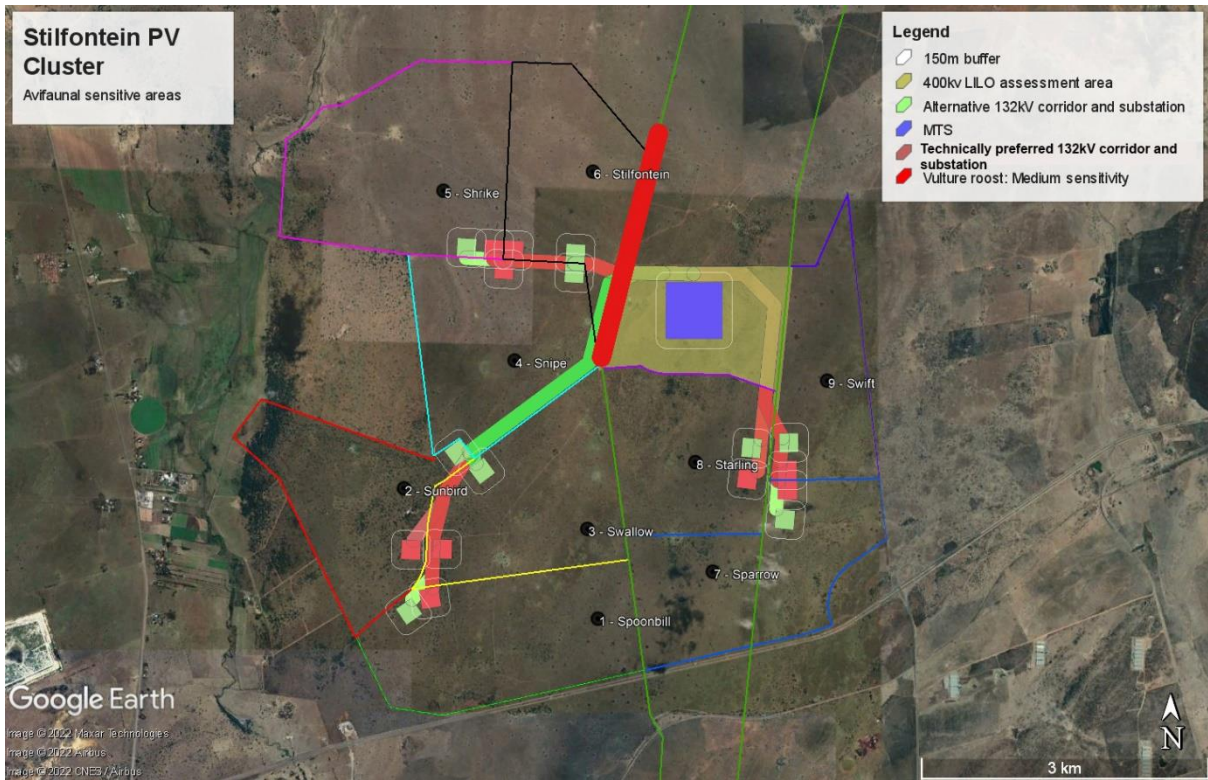
on the 400kV Hermes / Pluto 2 powerline (Figure 4-16 and Figure 4-17). It is expected that other powerline priority avifaunal species (more specifically raptors) may also use the powerlines for roosting and breeding.

Water reservoirs located throughout the Stilfontein Cluster area (see Figure 4-18) are important for priority avifauna and many non-priority species. Retaining at least four water reservoirs across the Stilfontein Cluster area (see Figure 1-1), with one retained in the north west, one retained in the south east, and two to be retained near the MTS, is deemed important to provide birds with adequate access to the water. The relocation of existing water points can be considered (with a minimum of four water points in the Cluster area). These four water points are considered by the specialist to provide adequate water resources for the avifauna in the cumulative assessment area. The specialist noted that a cement water trough is preferred to a water reservoir in terms of design of avian water points.



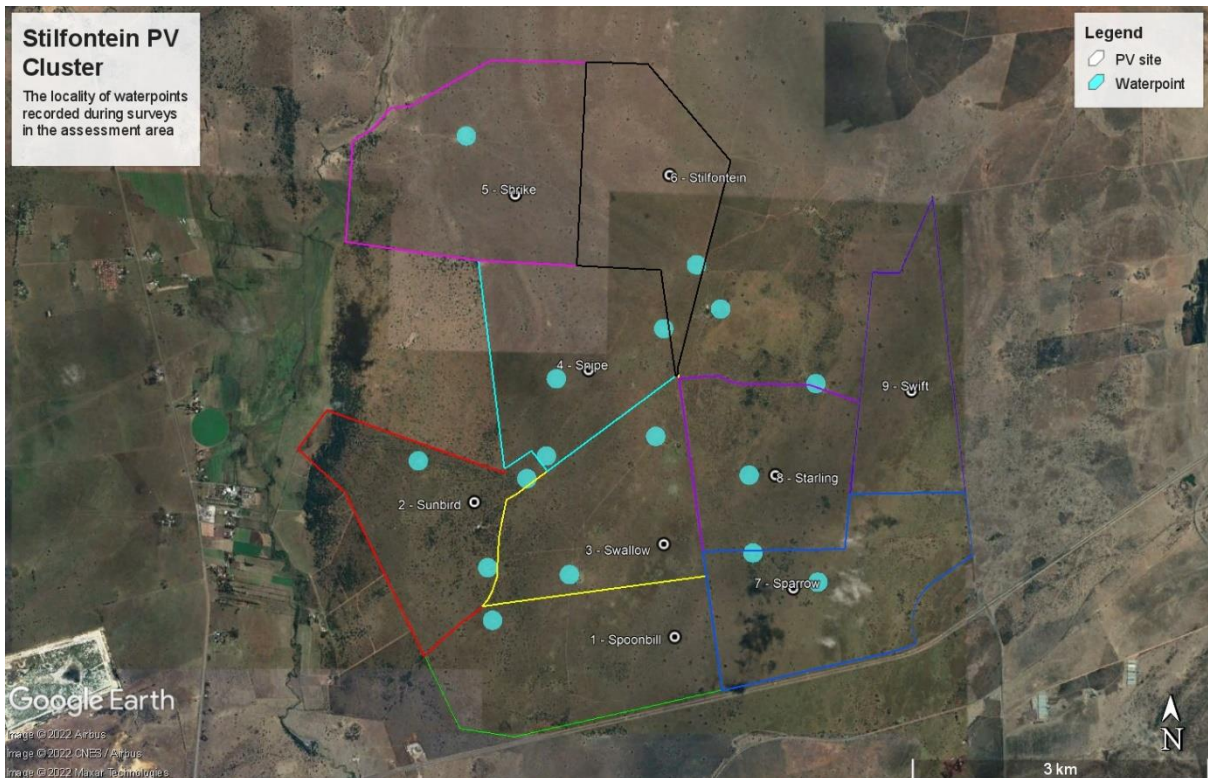
**Figure 4-16: White-backed vultures roosting on the 400kV Hermes – Pluto 2 transmission line**

Source: (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022)



**Figure 4-17: Location of White-backed Vulture roosts on the Hermes/Pluto 2 overhead line<sup>24</sup>**

Source: (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022)



**Figure 4-18: Location of water reservoirs in the Stilfontein Cluster project area**

Sources: (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022)

<sup>24</sup> The locality of the roost on the powerlines is likely to shift periodically in response to the availability of food (Chris van Rooyen Consulting, 2022).

## 4.2 Socio-Economic Environment

### 4.2.1 Regional Context

The project lies in the DKKDM, which comprises the JB Marks, City of Matlosana and Maquassi Hills LM. The DKKDM is situated in the south-eastern part of the North West Province and borders the Free State and Gauteng Provinces. The DKKDM is the smallest district in the North West Province, covering 14% of the provincial area, with a population of 742 822 in 2016, or 20% of the provincial population (Wazimap, 2022a) (DKKDM, 2017a). The area has a number of decommissioned gold mines (Batho Earth & SED, 2020). The district is strategically located along the national transport corridor between Johannesburg and Cape Town, with the N12 corridor forming the main regional development axis and a potential focal point for future development (Municipalities of South Africa, 2022a).

The Stilfontein Cluster project area is located in the JB Marks LM, with only the south-western portion falling within the City of Matlosana LM. JB Marks LM includes the towns of Potchefstroom and Ventersdorp and a number of large rural wards.

### 4.2.2 Demographics

The JB Marks LM population increased by 17% between 2011 and 2016 to 243 528, faster than the DKKDM population growth rate of 12%. Approximately 33% of the DKKDM population resides in the JB Marks LM (Wazimap, 2022c), of which the majority live in Potchefstroom and Ventersdorp (Batho Earth & SED, 2020). More than 95% of residents are younger than 65 years old: 35% of residents (~85 200 residents) are younger than 18 years and 60% (~146 500 residents) are aged between 18 – 64 years. The population in the JB Marks LM is comprised of 77% Black Africans, 17% Whites and 5% Coloureds (see Table 4-5).

The DKKDM population is comprised of 82% Black Africans, 4% Coloureds, 14% Whites and less than 1% Indians. (see Table 4-5).

Most households have three household members.

**Table 4-5: Population distribution (number and percentage) across the JB Marks LM, DKKDM and Province**

Population Group	JB Marks LM		DKKDM		North West Province	
<b>Black African</b>	187 656	77%	606 652	82%	3 432 379	92%
<b>Coloured</b>	12 987	5%	27 185	4%	61 010	2%
<b>Indian/ Asian</b>	1 620	1%	5 066	1%	16 686	1%
<b>White</b>	41 264	17%	103 919	14%	238 360	6%

Source: (Wazimap, 2022c) (Wazimap, 2022f)

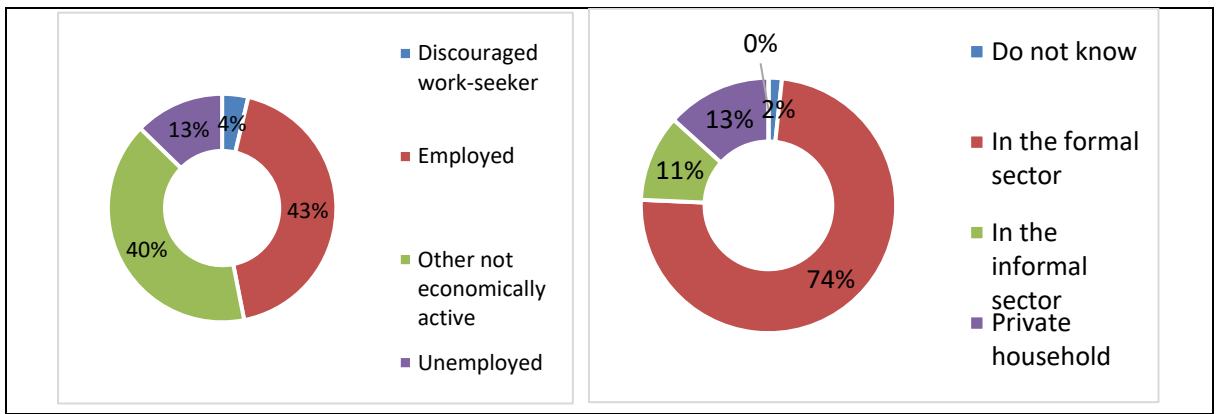
### 4.2.3 Social Characteristics

Employment opportunities in the DKKDM are limited. In rural areas, employment is primarily in the mining sector, which provides opportunities for primarily semi-skilled and unskilled workers and does not pay high wages. Towns have a slightly more diverse employment profile. Generally, the District is characterised by high levels of poverty and low levels of education.

The Human Development Index (HDI)<sup>25</sup> scores in the DKKDM are similar to national HDI scores, at 0.56 and 0.58 respectively in 2010, and are slightly higher than the provincial average, indicating that the DKKDM is relatively better off than other district municipalities in the North West. Poverty and inequality are entrenched throughout the province (NWP, 2013) and rising, affecting nearly one third of provincial residents. DKKDM poverty levels are slightly lower than the provincial average: the DKKDM Poverty Gap Index<sup>26</sup> increased from 27.8% to 30.2% between 2013 and 2019, whereas it increased from 27.9% to 31.4% across the North West (NWDC, 2021b) (NWDC, 2016), with the number of people living in poverty increasing by 12.3% in the DKKDM between 2013 and 2019 (NWDC, 2021a) (NWDC, 2016) – which does not yet take the economic effects of the COVID-19 pandemic into account.

The average annual households income in the JB Marks LM was R30 000 in 2011 (Wazimap, 2022g), with 39% of JB Marks households earning less than R20 000 per annum. Household income distribution is comparable across the JB Marks LM, DKKDM and North West Province.

Some 13% of JB Marks LM residents were unemployed in 2011, a further 4% were discouraged work seekers and 40% of people were not economically active (Wazimap, 2022e). Of the 43% of the working-age population that were employed, 74% worked in the formal sector (Wazimap, 2022e), while 24% had more precarious employment in the informal sector and private households (see Figure 4-19).



**Figure 4-19: Employment status (left) and sectors (right) in the JB Marks LM in 2011**

Source: (Wazimap, 2022e)

Housing is a basic human need and influences health, welfare and economic productivity. It is also an indicator of the standard of living. Only 71% of households in the JB Marks LM reside in formal dwellings (houses and apartments), while the remainder live in informal dwellings (16% in shacks and 8% in backyard flats). but is generally poorer in the rural areas.

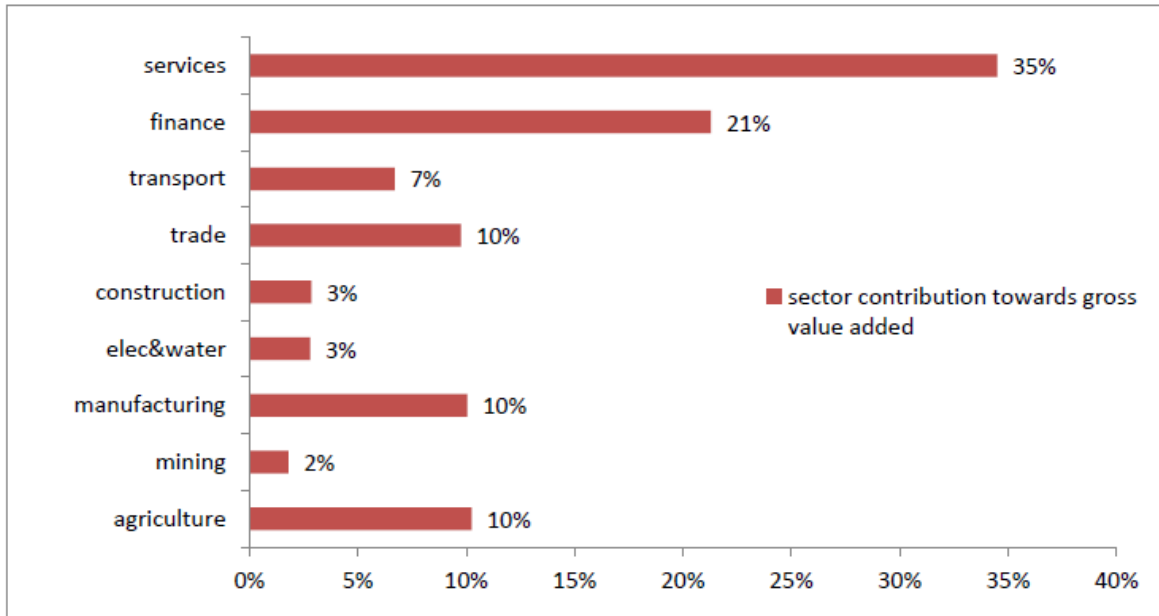
#### 4.2.4 Local Economy

The economy of the JB Marks LM is dominated by agriculture in the northern parts and services and manufacturing in the southern parts (Batho Earth & SED, 2020). The services sector is the largest

<sup>25</sup> The HDI quantifies the extent of human development of a community and is a “measure of people’s ability to live long and healthy lives, to communicate, to participate in the life of the community and to have sufficient resources to make a decent living” (NWP, 2013, p. 34).

<sup>26</sup> The Poverty Gap Index estimates the depth of poverty by considering how far, on the average, the poor are from that poverty line. The Poverty Gap Index is a percentage between 0% and 100%. Individuals whose income is above the poverty line have a gap of zero while individuals whose income is below the poverty line would have a gap ranging from 1% to 100% (with a theoretical value of 100% implying that the individual earns zero income). An overall value of zero implies that no one in the population is below the poverty line, while an overall value of 100% implies that everyone in the population earns zero income. A higher poverty gap index thus means that poverty is more severe.

contributor to the JB Marks LM, primarily due to the presence of the North West University in Potchefstroom as well as other governmental and private services (Figure 4-20).



**Figure 4-20: Economic structure of the JB Marks Municipality in 2017**

Source: (Batho Earth & SED, 2020)

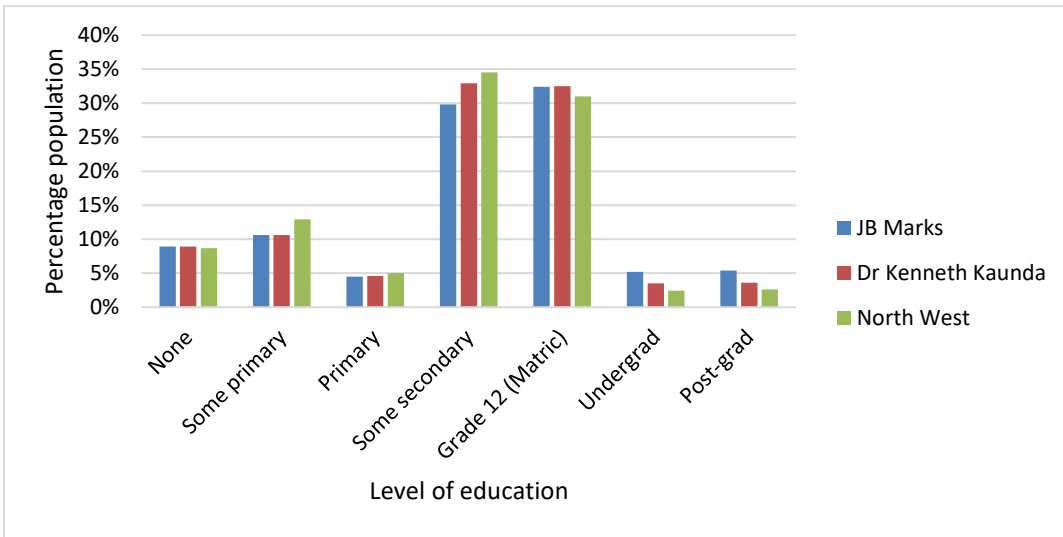
In 2020, the COVID-19 pandemic and associated domestic lockdowns placed the already contracting national economy under severe economic strain, and the national economy contracted by an unprecedented 51% in the second quarter of 2020 (Western Cape Provincial Treasury, 2020b). Ultimately national GDP contracted 6.4% in 2020, with the North West Province experiencing a larger contraction at 8%. Economic growth remained subdued nationally in 2021 with the persistence of the COVID-19 pandemic and outbreak of widespread rioting and looting of industries in parts of the country in July 2021.

#### 4.2.5 Education

Schooling levels in the JB Marks LM have improved slightly since 2011. A higher percentage of learners in the LM completed matric compared to the District and Province (Figure 4-21). While the overall percentage of the JB Marks population who completed matric and tertiary studies has increased between 2011 and 2016, the proportion of the population that has no schooling decreased (from 9.2% in 2011 to 8.9% in 2016), although very slowly. Although concerning, lower levels of formal education can be anticipated in largely rural communities.

#### 4.2.6 Health

The DKKDM is serviced by four hospitals and 35 permanent Community Health Care facilities and Clinics (DKKDM, 2020a). The number of people living with Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) in the North West increased significantly by 79% between 1996 and 2010 (NWP, 2013). Approximately 13% of the DKKDM population tested positive for HIV in 2019. A decrease in the number of deaths caused by tuberculosis was observed between 2011 and 2015 (from 14% to 9% of deaths in the district) (DKKDM, 2015) (DKKDM, 2020b). The DKKDM had seven quarantine sites for COVID-19 positive patients in 2020. By February 2022, 52 008 COVID-19 cases had been confirmed in the DKKDM (27% of provincial confirmed cases), and 1 951 COVID-19 deaths had been recorded (41% of provincial COVID-19 deaths) (North West Department of Health, 2022).



**Figure 4-21: JB Marks LM, district and provincial education for 2016<sup>27</sup>**

Source: (Wazimap, 2022c)

### 4.3 Historical and Cultural Environment

#### 4.3.1 Palaeontology, Archaeology and Historical Record

The proposed project lies in the southwestern part of the Transvaal Basin where the dolomites of the Malmani Group are exposed (Section 4.1.1 and Figure 4-1). The Late Archaean to early Proterozoic Transvaal Supergroup is preserved in three structural basins on the Kaapvaal Craton (Eriksson, Altermann, & Hartzler, 2006) of which two are in South Africa – the Transvaal and Griqualand West Basins. The predominantly carbonaceous sediments are evidence of the increase in the atmosphere of oxygen produced by algal colony photosynthesis, the so-called Great Oxygen Event (ca 2.4 – 2.3 billion years ago) and precursor to an environment where diverse life forms could evolve. The Neoproterozoic Transvaal Supergroup in South Africa contains the well-preserved stromatolitic Campbellrand-Malmani carbonate platform (Griqualand West Basin – Transvaal Basin respectively), which was deposited in shallow seawater shortly before the Great Oxidation Event.

The Transvaal Supergroup comprises one of world’s earliest carbonate platform successions (Beukes, 1987) (Eriksson, Altermann, & Hartzler, 2006) (Zeh, Wilson, & Gerdes, 2020). Well preserved stromatolites that are evidence of the photosynthetic activity of blue green bacteria and green algae (Cyanobacteria) are found in some areas. These microbes formed colonies in warm, shallow seas and deposited layer upon layer of minerals, often in domes or columns. The minerals are predominantly calcium carbonate, calcium sulphate, magnesium carbonate and magnesium sulphate. Only very rarely are the bacteria and algae preserved, but the stromatolites are traces of their activity, hence called trace fossils. As these fossils are protected by legislation, the palaeosensitivity of the Malmani Subgroup is regarded as very high. No stromatolites were however recorded on the project area.

The archaeological record for the greater study area consists of the Stone Age and Iron Age. Various Stone Age artifacts are expected to be found, including Acheulean stone tools from the Early Stone Age, stone tools and tools with handles from the Middle Stone Age (MSA) and a more diverse variety of artifacts such as microlithic stone tools, ostrich eggshell beads and rock art from the Later Stone Age (LSA). Sites containing artifacts from the LSA in the open are poorly preserved and therefore less valuable than those found in caves or rock shelters. Since there are no caves in the study area, no Stone Age sites of

<sup>27</sup> Data reflects education levels of individuals 20 years and older.

significance are expected. Low density scatters of MSA artefacts that are of low significance have been recorded to the north and west of the study area (van der Walt J. , 2022a) (van der Walt J. , Heritage Impact Assessment of the Roan 2 PV Development, North West Province, 2022b) (van der Walt J. , 2022c) (van der Walt J. , 2022d). Due to the readily available quartzite found on the site, scatters of the MSA are expected for the study area.

The well-known rock art site of Bosworth that also included LSA artifacts (Mason, 1962) is located to the northwest but will not be affected by the proposed project. Other LSA sites in the larger geographical area are located north and west of Klerksdorp (e.g., (Bergh, 1999) (Wells, 1933) (Maggs, 1976) (White, 1977)). No artifacts from the LSA were found in the project area.

Few sites dating back to the Iron Age have been recorded in the greater study area, but no artifacts of this period have been found on the project area. An old cemetery is located outside Klerksdorp and southwest of the project area, relating to the Second Boer War (1898-1902). No human remains or artifacts dating to this period were found on site.

Remains of low-density scatters of Stone Age artefacts noted during the field survey, a burial site and historical structures are shown in

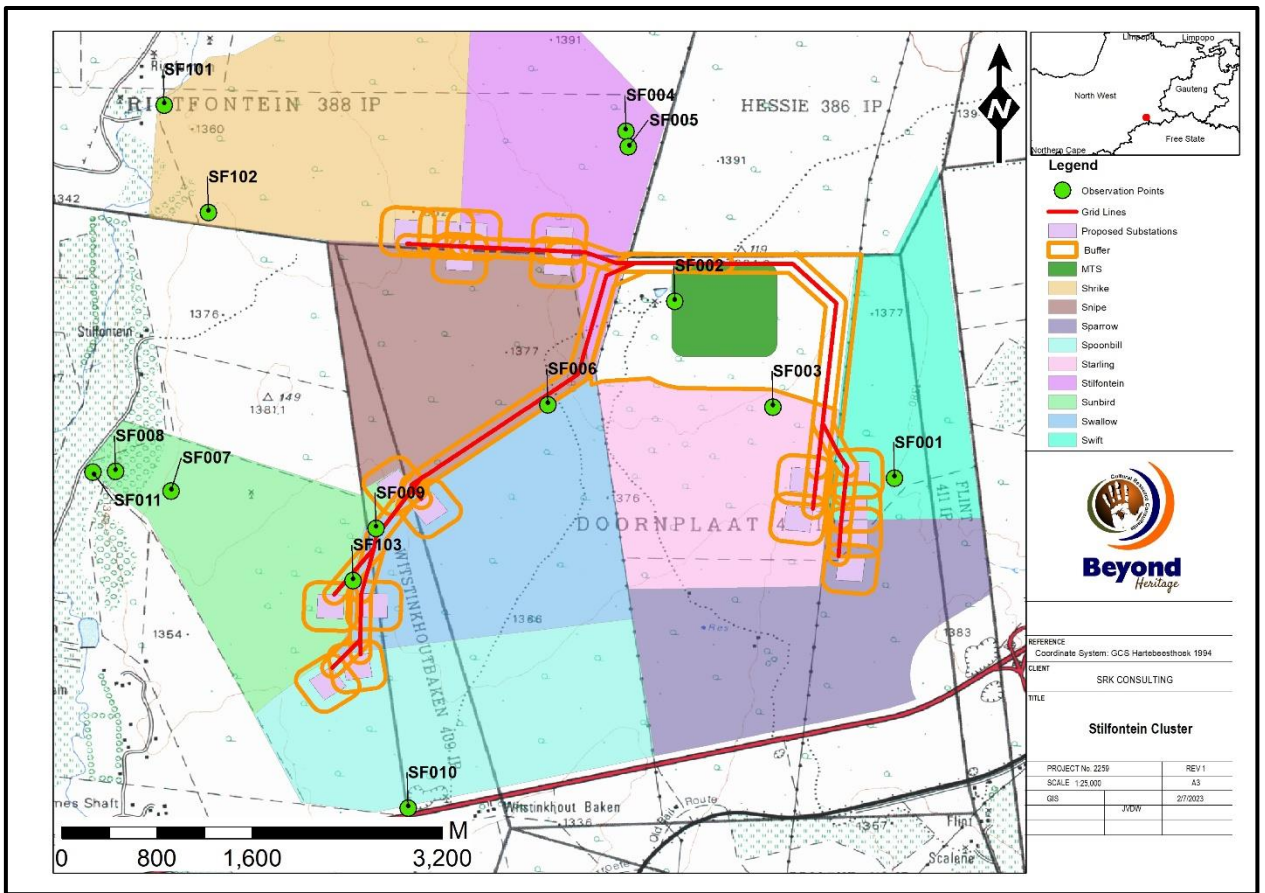


Figure 4-22 and Figure 4-23 and listed in Table 4-6.

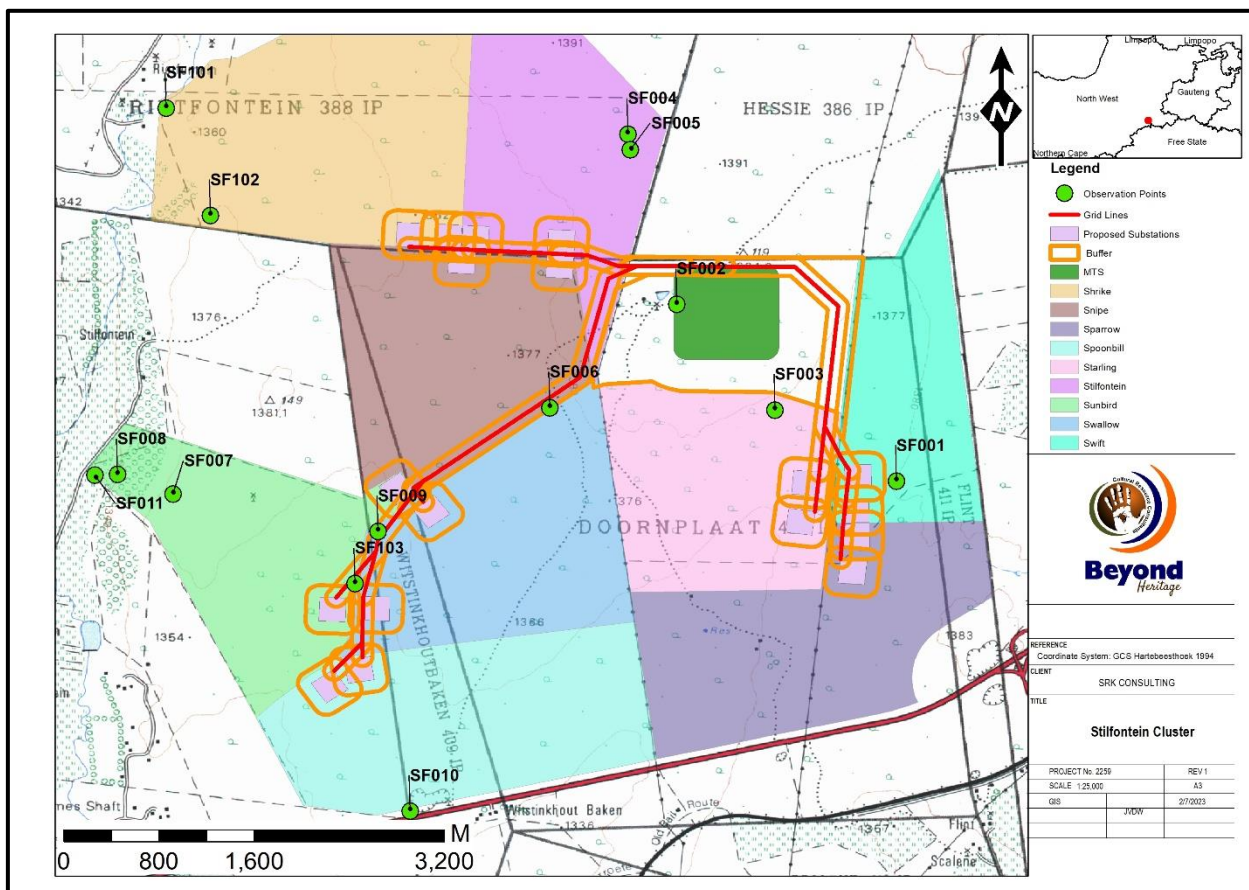


Figure 4-22: Location of heritage observations in the cumulative Stilfontein Cluster area

Source: (Beyond Heritage, 2022)

Table 4-6: Record of heritage observations in the cumulative Stilfontein Cluster area

ID	Description	Coordinates		Significance
		X	Y	
SF001	Low density MSA scatter	26,88707	-2978065	GP C, Low Significance
SF002	Low density MSA scatter	26,87045	-2976504	GP C, Low Significance
SF003	Low density MSA scatter	26,87787	-2977424	GP C, Low Significance
SF004	Isolated lithic Artefact	26,86674	-2975056	GP C, Low Significance
SF005	Isolated lithic artefact	26,86691	-2975189	GP C, Low Significance
SF006	Isolated Lithic artefact	26,86083	-2977327	GP C, Low Significance
SF007	Low density scatter	26,83232	-2977922	GP C, Low Significance
SF008	Historical Farmstead	26,82813	-2977737	GP C, Low Significance
SF009	Stone wall	26,84784	-2978306	GP C, Low Significance
SF010	A small stone-built structure	26,85027	-2980666	GP C, Low Significance



ID	Description	Coordinates		Significance
		X	Y	
SF011	Burial site	26,82642	-2977736	GP A, High Significance
SF101	Ruin foundation	26,83182	-26,7627	GP C, Low Significance
SF102	Ruin	26,83516	-26,7708	GP C, Low Significance
SF103	Stone and cement platform	26,8461	-26,7987	GP C, Low Significance

Source: (Beyond Heritage, 2022)

### 4.3.2 Cultural Landscape

The study area is in a rural setting and characterised by cultivation and agricultural activities with a historical layering consisting of Stone Age sites with modern infrastructure elements that are limited to agricultural infrastructure, remnants of mining activity, powerlines and gravel roads.

## 4.4 Visual and Aesthetic Environment

### 4.4.1 Visual Character

The visual character of the project area is determined by the topography, vegetation and land use of the area, which is predominantly a rural environment characterised by the undulating, vegetated landscape, albeit with large pockets of settlements and mining activity. Harsh, man-made structures and landforms introduced by mining dominate the landscape to the south-west of the Stilfontein Cluster. The rolling expanse of vegetated landscape to the north and east of the Stilfontein Cluster further evokes the natural, rural environment. The project area can therefore be defined as a modified rural landscape as it is mostly rural but settlements, mining activities and busy roads and railways are visible in the landscape.

The expansive and somewhat unspectacular landscape is further characterised by tailings dams and overburden stockpiles to the southwest, ranging from ~15 m to ~30 m in height, evidence past and present mining activity in the surrounding area.



Ventral view of chert lithics at SF001



Isolated artefact at SF004



Isolated artefact at SF004



Stone packed enclosure at SF009

**Figure 4-23: Photos of heritage observations in the cumulative Stilfontein Cluster area**

Sources: (Beyond Heritage, 2022)

#### 4.4.2 Visual Quality

The visual quality of the area is largely experienced through rolling views of the undulating landscape, especially from and across the project area. The visual quality of the project area is defined by the fabric of developed settlements and infrastructure surrounded by agricultural and mining activity. Some elements surrounding the proposed project area detract from the visual quality in the area, notably the exposed, unvegetated tailings dams and overburden stockpiles. Streams and rivers add to the visual quality of the project area.

#### 4.4.3 Sense of Place

The region has scenic value in terms of its undulating natural landscape and views over large portions of agricultural land and – within the project site – fairly pristine if undramatic grasslands and treescapes, reminiscent of African savannah landscapes (preserved in the nearby [proposed] Highveld National Park). The natural landscape and rustic character contrast with evidence of anthropogenic influence in the region, viz. mining, dense urban fabric and industry. To the north of the project area, visual-spatial quality is informed by the rural character of the area (farmsteads, smallholdings, rolling hills), while to the south it is informed by industrial and peri-urban textures (residential areas, mines and industrial areas).

The sense of place of the surrounding area is strongly influenced by the surrounding land use, which can generally be described as a rural mining area.

The relationship of receptors in the study area (Section 4.4.4) to place may be predominantly biographical and dependent. A family, for example, who has lived or worked in Klerksdorp or Stilfontein for a few generations will have a biographical and dependent attachment to the area.

#### 4.4.4 Visual Receptors

The Stilfontein Cluster is located across seven farms that neighbour farms to the north, east and west and abut the N12 national highway to the south (Figure 1-3). Beyond the N12 to the south and southeast are the settlements of Khuma and Stilfontein and various industrial and mining areas.

Visual receptors have been identified based on surrounding land uses. The visual receptors are briefly described below and linked to viewpoints (VP) indicated in Figure 4-24):

- *Residents* (VP2 – VP3, VP6 – VP8, VP11 – VP13): The residential areas of Stilfontein and Khuma are located to the southwest of the PV Facilities. Isolated farmsteads are interspersed throughout the area surrounding the PV Facilities in all directions, but especially to the east and west.
- *Recreational* (VP8 - VP10): The Frontier Shooting Range (VP 8), Camp Louico (VP9) and Khora Lion Park (VP10) are located to the west of the sites.
- *Motorists* (VP1 - VP5, VP7 – VP8, VP15 – VP18): Three roads are located in close proximity, to the east, south and west of the sites. To the east is an unnamed street (hereafter referred to as Road East). The N12 national dual-carriage way is situated to the south of the site. Vermaasdrift Road extends north - south, to the west of the project site.

Landowners and occupiers (tenants) of the seven farms are considered as receptors; however, they have reached a negotiated agreement with Mainstream and will receive financial remuneration in compensation for development on their properties. As such, they are not deemed to be sensitive receptors.

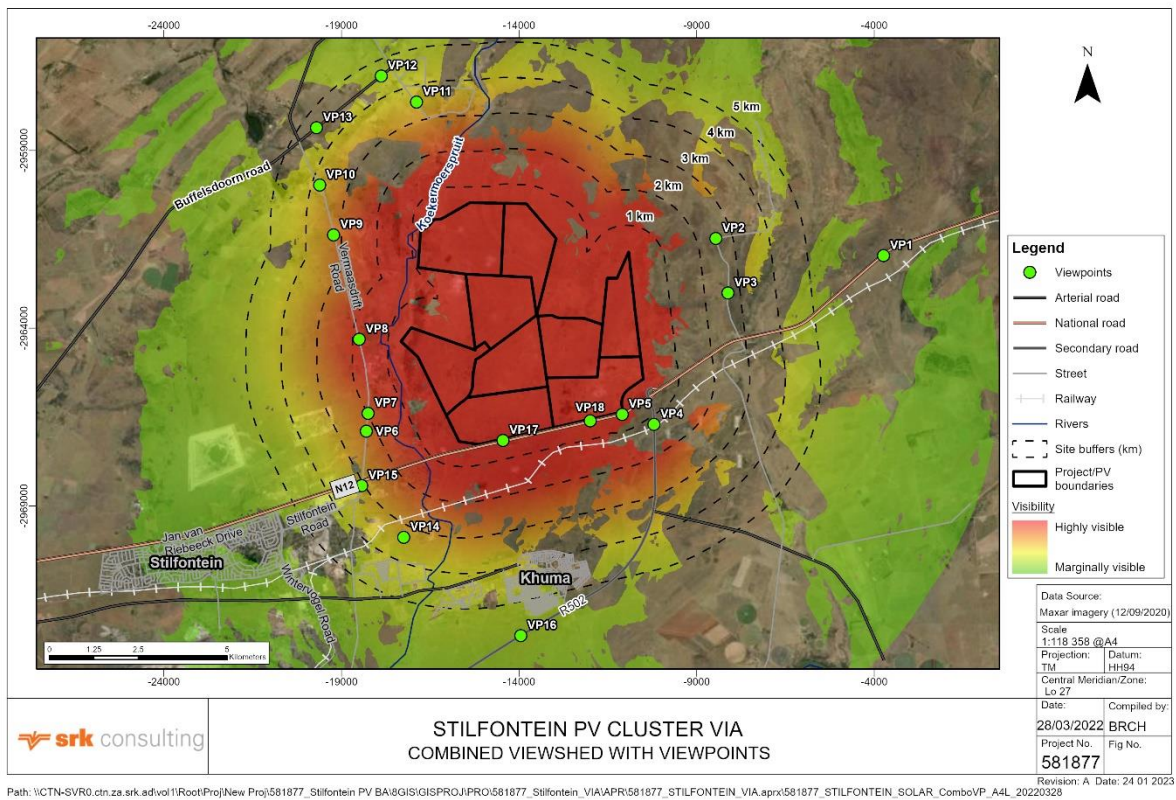
#### 4.4.5 Viewing Distance and Visibility

The visibility of the project can be summarised as follows:

- The project will be highly visible in the foreground and middle ground to motorists on the N12 (VP5, VP16 and VP17);

- The project will largely be screened by topography and vegetation, and, therefore, will be marginally visible to receptors located some distance away (VP1) and to the south (VP4, VP6 and VP15), west (VP9) and north (VP10 – VP13); and
- The project will not be visible from the east (VP2 and VP3), far south (VP14) and west (VP7 and VP8) due to topography.

Overall, the visibility of the project is moderate due to its high visibility to transient motorists on the N12, and marginal visibility to highly sensitive receptors (e.g. residents).

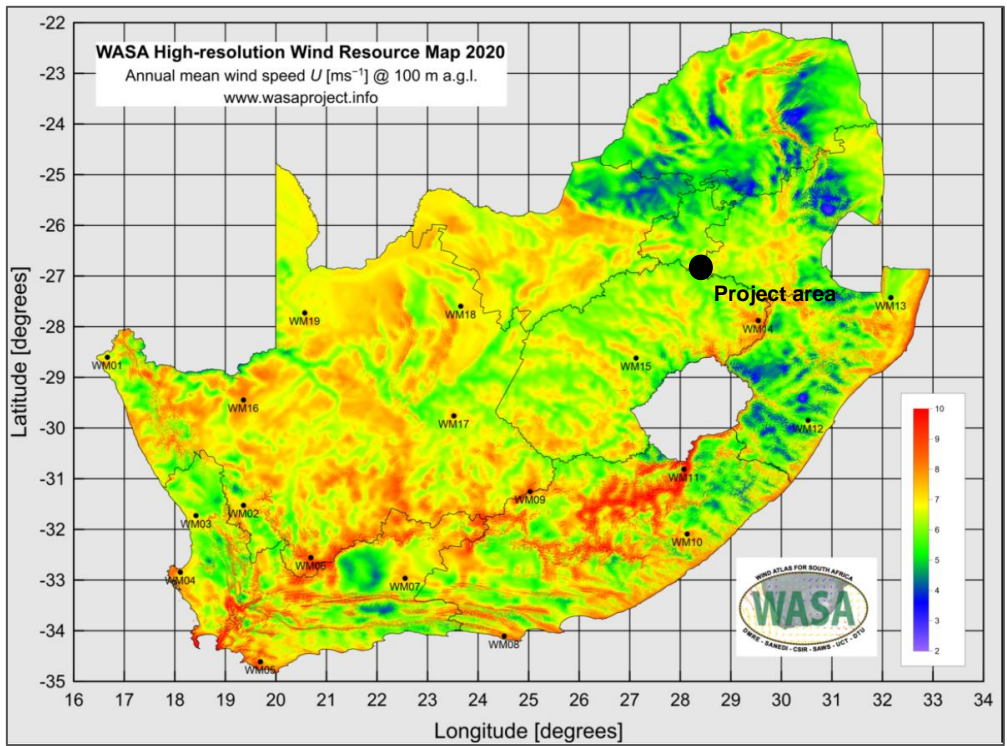


**Figure 4-24: Combined viewshed with viewpoints in the Stilfontein Cluster**

Source: (SRK Consulting, 2022a)

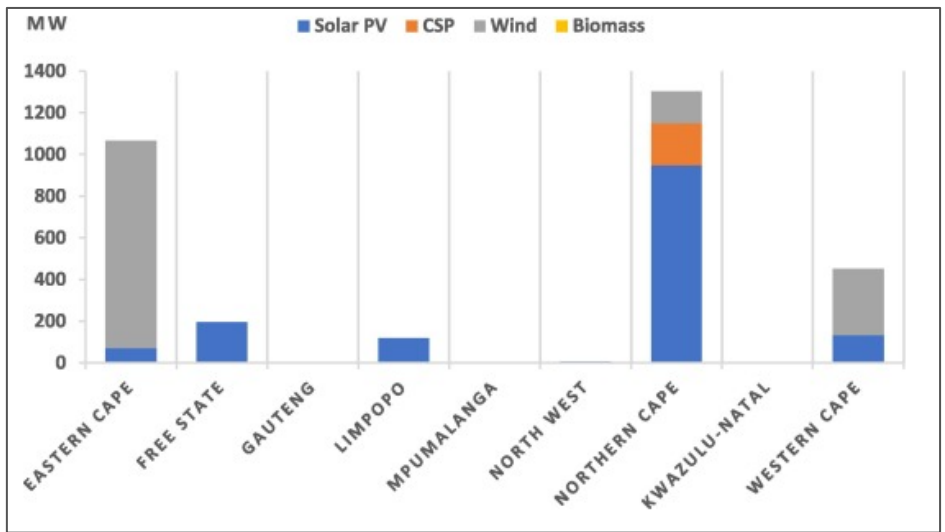
## 4.5 Regional Renewable Energy Sector

The North West Province has a lower potential for renewable energy projects than other areas of South Africa, due to lower solar (see Figure 3-9) and wind energy (see Figure 4-25) resources. As such, it has not received as much interest from renewable energy companies as some other provinces (see Figure 4-26). However, the solar energy resource is of high quality and the area may become increasingly attractive as it has spare grid capacity to evacuate renewable energy, while none is currently available in some other areas, e.g. Northern Cape.



**Figure 4-25: Diab’s wind atlas (left) and Hagemann’s wind atlas (right)**

Source: (WASA, 2020)



**Figure 4-26: Distribution of renewable energy production in South African (2020)**

Source: (Akinbami, Oke, & Bodunrin, 2021)

Four renewable energy projects were awarded in the North West during the 2018 REIPPPP Bid Window 4: Waterloo (75 MW) near Vryburg, Zeerust (75 MW) near Zeerust, Bokomaso (68 MW) near Rustenburg and De Wildt (50 MW) near Brits, all of which were operational as of early 2021 (DMRE, n.d.). These projects contribute(d) to local employment (mostly during construction) and development of communities within a 50 km radius through investment in SED projects and Enterprise Development (ED) (Waterloo Solar, n.d.), (De Wildt Solar, n.d.). None of these are located in the DKKDM.

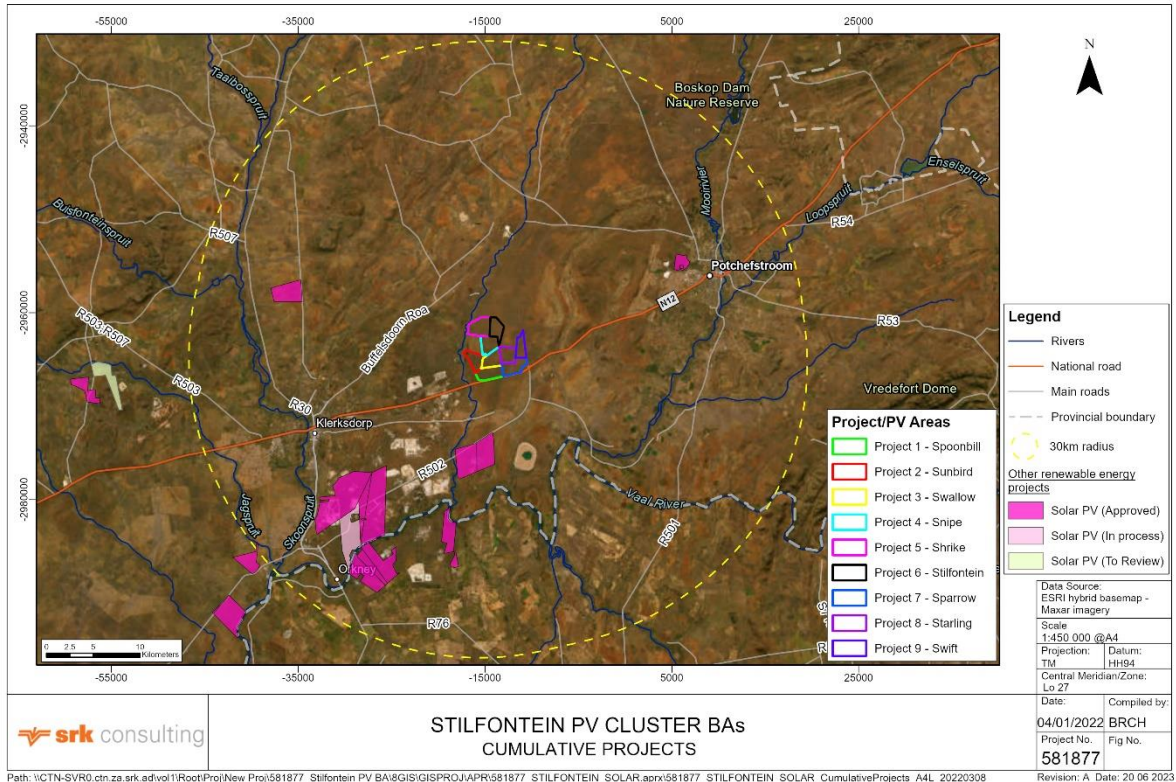
Although several solar farms in the Klerksdorp REDZ received EA in the past (see Table 4-7 and Figure 4-26) none have established, and the project area has not yet benefitted from renewable energy projects. The Klerksdorp REDZ was declared in 2020 during the second REDZ designation round, in a specific

attempt to generate a renewables industry near coal and gold mining towns to begin the process of just transition, i.e. where the poor and working class are not left behind in an energy transition process (Creamer T. , 2020).

**Table 4-7: Renewable energy projects under consideration in the project area**

<b>Project</b>	<b>DFFE Reference</b>	<b>Capacity</b>	<b>EA Status</b>
Noko Solar Power Plant	14/12/16/3/3/1/2474	20 MW	Approved
Nyarhi Solar Power Plant	14/12/16/3/3/1/2533	100 MW	Approved
YMS Tlokwe Photovoltaic Power Plant	12/12/20/2122	5 MW	Approved
Kabi Witkop Solar 1 PV facility	12/12/20/2507/1	75 MW	In process
Kabi Vaalkop Photovoltaic Facility	12/12/20/2513/1	75 MW	Approved
Kabi Vaalkop Photovoltaic Facility	12/12/20/2513/2	75 MW	Approved
Kabi Vaalkop Photovoltaic Facility	12/12/20/2513/3	75 MW	Approved
YMS Mineral Resources PV Plant	12/12/20/2629	20 MW	Approved
Paleso Solar PV	14/12/16/3/3/1/2365	150 MW	Approved
Siyanda Solar PV	14/12/16/3/3/2/1/2369	150 MW	Approved
Buffels Solar PV 1	14/12/16/3/3/2/777	75 MW	Approved
Buffels Solar PV2	14/12/16/3/3/2/778	100 MW	Approved
Orkney PV SEF	14/12/16/3/3/2/954	100 MW	Approved
Vaal River Solar 3 PV facility	12/12/20/2513/3/AM6	250 MW	Approved
Buffels solar energy facility	14/12/16/3/3/2/777/AM2	75 MW	Approved
Orkney PV solar energy facility	14/12/16/3/3/2/954/AM1	100 MW	Approved
Witkop Solar PV II facility	12/12/20/2507/2	61 MW	In process
Roan 1 solar PV facility	14/12/16/3/3/1/2539	120 MW	To Review
Roan 2 solar PV facility	14/12/16/3/3/1/2540	120 MW	Approved
Doornhoek 1 PV facility	14/12/16/3/3/1/2548	115 MW	Approved
Doornhoek 2 PV facility	14/12/16/3/3/1/2549	50 MW	Approved

Source: (DFFE, Q1 2023 REEA database, 2023)



**Figure 4-27: Renewable energy projects under consideration in the project area**

Source: (DFFE, Q1 2023 REEA database, 2023)

## 5 Stakeholder Engagement

Stakeholder engagement forms a key component of the BA process. The objectives of stakeholder engagement are outlined in this section, followed by a summary of the approach followed in compliance with Chapter 6 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 and any issues raised by the public with regard to the proposed project during the Pre-Application Phase.

As of 1 July 2021, sections of the Protection of Personal Information Act 4 of 2013 (POPIA), which aims to promote protection of personal information, came into effect. The EIA Regulations, 2014 require, inter alia, transparent disclosure of registered stakeholders and their comments. In terms of the EIA Regulations, 2014, stakeholders who submit comments, attend a meeting or request registration in writing are deemed registered stakeholders who must be added to the project’s Registered Stakeholder Database with their contact details. Therefore, **registered stakeholders are deemed to give their consent for relevant information (including name and contact details) to be processed and disclosed, in fulfilment of the requirements of the EIA Regulations, 2014 and the National Appeal Regulations, 2014.**

### 5.1 Objectives and Approach to Stakeholder Engagement

The overall aim of public consultation is to ensure that all stakeholders have adequate opportunity to provide input into the process and raise their comments and concerns. More specifically, the objectives of public consultation are to:

- Identify IAPs and inform them about the proposed development and BA process;
- Provide the public with the opportunity to participate effectively in the process and identify relevant issues and concerns;
- Coordinate cooperation between organs of state in the consideration of the assessment; and
- Provide the public with the opportunity to review documentation and assist in identifying mitigation and management options to address potential environmental issues.

### 5.2 Stakeholder Engagement during the Basic Assessment Process

Public participation is undertaken to raise public and authority awareness of the proposed project. Table 5-1 outlines stakeholder engagement activities that form part of the BA process.

**Table 5-1: BA Process stakeholder engagement activities**

Task	Objectives	Dates
Pre-application meeting with DFFE	To discuss the proposed approach of the BA processes, specialist studies and stakeholder engagement with the Competent Authority	21 February 2022
Place posters on-site	To notify stakeholders of the BA process, provide an initial description of the proposed project, and invite stakeholder registrations and initial comments.	19 May 2022
Advertise commencement of the BA processes for the projects		26 May 2022
1 <sup>st</sup> Public comment period	Stakeholder registration and initial comments.	26 May - 30 June 2022
<b>At this stage, the project description was adjusted by Mainstream and the BA processes were temporarily put on hold whilst technical information was being refined for the grid solution, as well as confirmation on who the competent authority would be awaited. This has since been resolved and the stakeholder engagement process has been reinitiated as follows:</b>		
Place updated posters on-site	To invite stakeholder registrations and to notify IAPs of the availability of the BAR for comment.	06 April 2023
Re-advertise commencement of the BA processes for the projects		13 April 2023



Task	Objectives	Dates
Notify stakeholders of the release of the Grid/MTS BARs for public comment, and distribute Executive Summary		23 October 2023
Public comment period	To provide stakeholders with the opportunity to review and comment on the results of the impact assessment, and to obtain written comments from stakeholders on the BAR.	23 October – 22 November 2023
Compile Issues and Responses Summary and finalise BAR	To record and respond to all issues and concerns raised by stakeholders and to collate these comments in the Final BAR to inform DFFE's decision on whether to authorise the project.	By 08 February 2024

The key activities are described further below.

### 5.2.1 Identification of Key Stakeholders and IAPs

SRK made a concerted effort to identify various local, provincial and national authorities, local ratepayers' forums and surrounding landowners and occupants for inclusion in the project database. SRK also obtained the assistance of several local stakeholders who disseminated project notification in local resident communication groups.

Relevant authorities are automatically registered as IAPs. As specified in the EIA Regulations, 2014, all persons who submit written comments, attend meetings or request registration in writing are placed on the project register. The stakeholder database currently includes 221 IAPs and will be updated throughout the BA process. To comply with POPIA, the full registered stakeholder database is not provided in, or attached to, reports made available in the public domain. However, the registered stakeholder database (including name and contact information) will need to be provided to the appellant(s) if the EA is appealed, and it may also need to be provided to other consultants if, for example, they are required to notify adjacent landowners of matters arising during project implementation or of the findings of an external audit report.

The registered stakeholder database is attached as Appendix C.1.

### 5.2.2 Newspaper Advertisements, Site Notices and Letter Drops

Newspaper advertisements announcing the commencement of the BA processes and inviting IAPs to register on the project database were placed in the local paper *Klerksdorp Record* (in Afrikaans and English) on 26 May 2022 to afford stakeholders additional time to register prior to the release of the BAR for comment. Proof of placement of newspaper advertisements is included in Appendix C.3.

Several A2 site notices (in English) were placed at the Stilfontein Cluster project boundary and nearby areas accessible to the public. These notices include brief details of the proposed project and BA process and the contact details of the consultant (see Table 5-2). Proof of site notice placement is included in Appendix C.2.

A4 copies of the site notice were also placed on the community noticeboard at the Stilfontein Library and various other public access points (see Table 5-2). Proof of notice placement is included in Appendix C.3.

**Table 5-2: Site notices and posters placed near Stilfontein Cluster**

Location of site notice placements	Coordinates
Stilfontein Library	26°50'42.43"S, 26°46'26.54"E
Along Vermaasdrift Road on Rietfontein RE/388 property boundary	26°45'54.37"S, 26°48'27.40"E

Location of site notice placements	Coordinates
Corner of Vermaasdrift Road and Buffelsdoorn Road	26°44'20.96"S, 26°47'49.47"E
Corner of N12 and Vermaasdrift Road (MMC Motors)	26°49'29.94"S, 26°48'54.14"E
Along N12 on Witstinkhoutbaken 1/409 property boundary	26°48'55.88"S, 26°51'9.04"E
Along N12 on Doornplaat RE/3/410 property boundary	26°48'37.64"S, 26°52'39.38"E

Forty-two notification letters were dropped with neighbours and communities within 2-5 km of the Stilfontein Cluster on 19 May 2022 at the locations shown in Table 5-3. Evidence is provided in Appendix C.4.

**Table 5-3: Letter drops near Stilfontein Cluster**

Location	Number of letters dropped	Coordinates
West of Stilfontein Cluster	10	not recorded
West of Stilfontein Cluster	10	26°47'36.25"S, 26°49'13.23"E
West of Stilfontein Cluster, Frontier Shooting Range	1	26°47'35.84"S, 26°49' 6.03"E
Farm north of Stilfontein Cluster	2	26°44'20.66"S, 26°50'8.82"E
Doornplaat RE/4/410	1	26°48'50.61"S, 26°51'32.82"E
Doornplaat RE/3/410	1	26°48'37.43"S, 26°52'39.04"E
East of Stilfontein Cluster	1	26°49'54.92"S, 26°51'44.10"E
East of Stilfontein Cluster	1	26°46'57.10"S, 26°54'10.36"E
East of Stilfontein Cluster	1	26°45'51.38"S, 26°54'42.56"E
Stilfontein Library	14	26°50'42.43"S, 26°46'26.54"E

The site notice was also sent to two local stakeholders via email and WhatsApp for distribution in local resident communication groups.

### 5.2.3 Comments Received During the Pre-Application Phase

Stakeholder comments were received prior to the release of the BAR through the following channels:

- Interviews with key stakeholders as part of the SIA (see Section 5 of the SIA in Appendix D.5); and
- Initial comments from stakeholders upon registering as IAPs for the project (see Issues and Responses Summary in Appendix C.6).

Broadly summarised:

- Landowners reported that the project is expected to have a positive impact on farmers as it provides an alternative income to offset declining farming income and productivity;
- The municipality / organisations representing local residents reported that the closure of mining operations has led to demand for new work opportunities, though renewable energy projects are unlikely to compensate fully for the loss of previous mining sector jobs;
- Stakeholders located near the project area reported that the development of a solar farm(s) in the project area is not expected to affect neighbouring businesses and that they are generally supportive of the project; and

- IAPs registering for the project welcomed future business opportunities for Small and Medium Enterprises in the area.

#### **5.2.4 Notification of BAR for Public Comment**

Subsequent to the initial stakeholder engagement process, the BA process was put on hold while the project description was refined by Mainstream. The following was undertaken to notify stakeholders of the recommencement of the process and the opportunity to comment on the Draft BAR:

- Site notices were placed on the site boundary and nearby areas accessible to the public including the community noticeboard at the Stilfontein Library and various other public access points (see Appendix C.2);
- An advertisement in the Klerksdorp Record (in English and Afrikaans) on 14 April 2023 (Appendix C.3),
- A total of 60 notification letters were dropped at neighbouring properties/farms and communities within close proximity of the Stilfontein Cluster (see Appendix C.4); and
- The notification letter was sent to two local stakeholders via email and WhatsApp for distribution in local resident communication groups (see Appendix C.5).

Registered stakeholders have been notified of the release of the Draft BAR for public review. Notifications, including copies of the Executive Summary, were sent by email, sms, fax or post to all registered IAPs. Proof of notification has been included in Appendix C.5.

The report has been made accessible as an electronic copy on SRK's website [www.srk.com](http://www.srk.com) (via the "Knowledge Centre" and then "Public Documents" links). Hard copies of the report have been placed at the Stilfontein Library for public review and to authorities upon request.

Stakeholders are afforded a 30-day comment period, ending on 07 November 2023.

#### **5.2.5 Next Steps**

Following initial review of the BAR, issues raised by authorities and the public will be responded to in an Issues and Responses Summary, which will be appended to the finalised BAR. The BAR will be updated (if necessary) taking stakeholder input into account. The finalised BAR will then be submitted to the DFFE for decision making.

Registered IAPs will be informed of the submission of the finalised BAR and provided with the Issues and Responses Summary.

# 6 Environmental Impact Assessment

## 6.1 Introduction

### 6.1.1 Environmental Impacts Identified

Based on the professional experience of the EIA team, legal requirements (Section 2), the nature of the proposed activity (Section 3), the nature of the receiving environment (Section 4) and issues raised in the stakeholder comments during the pre-application phase (Section 5), the following key environmental issues – potential negative impacts and potential benefits – were identified:

- **Freshwater ecology** – potential loss of wetlands associated with bulk earthworks during construction;
- **Terrestrial ecology** – potential loss of faunal and floral habitat and species associated with construction and operation of the project;
- **Avifauna** – Mortality and disturbance of birds due to construction and operation of the project;
- **Land capability** – loss or sterilisation of arable soils associated with construction and operation of the project;
- **Socio-economic** – potential socio-economic benefits and impacts to the wider community in the form of job creation, investment, community ownership and nuisance factors during construction; and
- **Heritage and palaeontology** – potential destruction of significant heritage resources associated with bulk earthworks during construction;
- **Visual** – potential loss of visual quality and sense of place associated with project components; and
- **Traffic** – trip generation during the construction phase.

### 6.1.2 Specialist Studies Undertaken

The Screening Tool (see Section 2.1.1.2) indicated specialist assessments to be considered by the EAP for inclusion in the BA. SRK has evaluated the proposed studies and commissioned most specialist studies listed in the Screening Tool, as shown in Table 6-1.

The specialist studies (see Table 4-1 and Table 6-1) were undertaken to investigate the key potential direct, indirect and cumulative impacts (negative and positive) listed in Section 6.1.1. Sections 6.2 to 6.8 provide a summary of the findings and impact management measures identified in the specialist reports.

**Table 6-1: Specialist studies proposed in the DFFE Screening Tool**

Specialist study proposed in Screening Tool	Specialist report appendix / SRK comment
Aquatic biodiversity IA	Appendix D.1: Freshwater study
Animal species IA	Appendix D.2: Terrestrial ecology study
Plant species IA	
Terrestrial biodiversity IA	
Avian IA	Appendix D.3: Avifauna study
Agricultural IA	Appendix D.4: Soil and land capability study
Socio-economic IA	Appendix D.5: Socio-economic study

<b>Specialist study proposed in Screening Tool</b>	<b>Specialist report appendix / SRK comment</b>
Archaeological and cultural heritage IA	Appendix D.6: Heritage and palaeontology study
Palaeontology IA	
Landscape / Visual IA	Appendix D.7: Visual study
Geotechnical IA	A preliminary Geotechnical Desktop Study has been undertaken for Stilfontein Solar Photovoltaic Cluster) to determine geotechnical feasibility. Mainstream will undertake a more detailed geotechnical assessment, as may be required, during detailed design phase. The proponent will obtain any required geotechnical input to inform the design of the facility.
Civil Aviation IA	The sensitivity of the project area was deemed low in DFFE's Screening Tool Report with regards to civil aviation. No major civil aviation aerodromes are located near the project area. SACAA were notified of the project and provided with the opportunity to comment on the DBAR. No comment was received by SACAA. Comments from relevant authorities, e.g. the SACAA, will be sought through the stakeholder engagement process.
Defence Assessment	The sensitivity of the project area was deemed low in DFFE's Screening Tool Report with regards to defence. SANDAF were notified of the project and provided with the opportunity to comment on the DBAR. No comment was received by SANDAF. Comment from relevant authorities will be sought through the stakeholder engagement process.
RFI Assessment	The sensitivity of the project area was deemed low in DFFE's Screening Tool Report with regards to RFI. Several telecommunication service providers in the region were notified of the project and provided with the opportunity to comment on the DBAR. Comment was received by Openserve, a Division of Telkom SA SOC Ltd. Openserve provided approval in terms of section 22 of the Electronic Communications Act 36 of 2005. Comment from relevant authorities will be sought through the stakeholder engagement process.

### 6.1.3 Alternatives Assessed in the EIA

During the prefeasibility phase of most projects various development alternatives are investigated. Furthermore, the EIA Regulations, 2014 require that all BA processes must identify and describe “alternatives to the proposed activity that are feasible and reasonable”. Depending on the specific project circumstances various alternatives may be considered.

Various alternatives were considered during the initial screening and feasibility phases of this project, some of which were eliminated for technical reasons (refer to Section 3.4). The alternatives assessed in Sections 6.2 to 6.8 are listed in Table 3-1.

### 6.1.4 Impact Rating Methodology

The assessment of impacts was based on specialists’ expertise, SRK’s professional judgement, field observations and desk-top analysis.

The significance of potential impacts that may result from the proposed project was determined in order to assist decision-makers (typically by a designated competent authority or state agency, but in some instances, the applicant).

The **significance** of an impact is defined as a combination of the **consequence** of the impact occurring and the **probability** that the impact will occur.

The criteria used to determine impact consequence are presented in the table below.

**Table 6-2: Criteria used to determine the consequence of the impact**

Rating	Definition of Rating	Score
<b>A. Extent– the area over which the impact will be experienced</b>		
<b>Local</b>	Confined to project area (e.g. the development site and immediate surrounds)	<b>1</b>
<b>Regional</b>	The region (e.g. municipality or Quaternary catchment)	<b>2</b>
<b>(Inter) national</b>	Nationally or beyond	<b>3</b>
<b>B. Intensity– the magnitude of the impact in relation to the sensitivity of the receiving environment, taking into account the degree to which the impact may cause irreplaceable loss of resources</b>		
<b>Low</b>	Site-specific and wider natural and/or social functions and processes are negligibly altered	<b>1</b>
<b>Medium</b>	Site-specific and wider natural and/or social functions and processes continue albeit in a modified way	<b>2</b>
<b>High</b>	Site-specific and wider natural and/or social functions or processes are severely altered and/or irreplaceable resources <sup>28</sup> are lost	<b>3</b>
<b>C. Duration– the timeframe over which the impact will be experienced and its reversibility</b>		
<b>Short-term</b>	Up to 2 years and reversible	<b>1</b>
<b>Medium-term</b>	2 to 15 years and reversible	<b>2</b>
<b>Long-term</b>	More than 15 years and irreversible	<b>3</b>

The combined score of these three criteria corresponds to a **Consequence Rating**, as follows:

**Table 6-3: Method used to determine the consequence score**

<b>Combined Score (A+B+C)</b>	3 – 4	5	6	7	8 – 9
<b>Consequence Rating</b>	Very low	Low	Medium	High	Very high

Once the consequence was derived, the probability of the impact occurring was considered, using the probability classifications presented in the table below.

**Table 6-4: Probability classification**

<b>Probability– the likelihood of the impact occurring</b>	
<b>Improbable</b>	<b>&lt; 40% chance of occurring</b>
<b>Possible</b>	<b>40% - 70% chance of occurring</b>
<b>Probable</b>	<b>&gt; 70% - 90% chance of occurring</b>
<b>Definite</b>	<b>&gt; 90% chance of occurring</b>

<sup>28</sup> Defined as important cultural or biological resource which occur nowhere else, and for which there are no substitutes.

The overall **significance** of impacts was determined by considering consequence and probability using the rating system prescribed in the table below.

**Table 6-5: Impact significance ratings**

		Probability			
		Improbable	Possible	Probable	Definite
Consequence	Very Low	<b>INSIGNIFICANT</b>	<b>INSIGNIFICANT</b>	<b>VERY LOW</b>	<b>VERY LOW</b>
	Low	<b>VERY LOW</b>	<b>VERY LOW</b>	<b>LOW</b>	<b>LOW</b>
	Medium	<b>LOW</b>	<b>LOW</b>	<b>MEDIUM</b>	<b>MEDIUM</b>
	High	<b>MEDIUM</b>	<b>MEDIUM</b>	<b>HIGH</b>	<b>HIGH</b>
	Very High	<b>HIGH</b>	<b>HIGH</b>	<b>VERY HIGH</b>	<b>VERY HIGH</b>

Finally the impacts were also considered in terms of their status (positive or negative impact) and the confidence in the ascribed impact significance rating. The prescribed system for considering impacts status and confidence (in assessment) is laid out in the table below.

**Table 6-6: Impact status and confidence classification**

<b>Status of impact</b>	
Indication whether the impact is adverse (negative) or beneficial (positive).	+ ve (positive – a ‘benefit’)
	– ve (negative – a ‘cost’)
<b>Confidence of assessment</b>	
The degree of confidence in predictions based on available information, SRK’s judgment and/or specialist knowledge.	Low
	Medium
	High

The impact significance rating should be considered by authorities in their decision-making process based on the implications of ratings ascribed below:

**INSIGNIFICANT:** the potential impact is negligible and **will not** have an influence on the decision regarding the proposed activity/development.

**VERY LOW:** the potential impact is very small and **should not** have any meaningful influence on the decision regarding the proposed activity/development.

**LOW:** the potential impact **may not** have any meaningful influence on the decision regarding the proposed activity/development.

**MEDIUM:** the potential impact **should** influence the decision regarding the proposed activity/development.

**HIGH:** the potential impact **will** affect the decision regarding the proposed activity/development.

**VERY HIGH:** The proposed activity should only be approved under special circumstances.

## 6.2 Potential Soil and Land Capability Impacts

### 6.2.1 Introduction

The assessment is based on the Soil Specialist Study, which contains more detail (see Appendix D.4). The ToR for the study were to:

- Describe the soil characteristics in the project area;
- Classify the soil and land capability / potential and current land use;
- Identify and assess potential impacts of the project on soil and land capability;
- Recommend relevant mitigation measures; and
- Compile a Report compliant with Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations (2014), relevant guidelines and/or the Environmental Assessment Protocols (GN R320 of 2020), as applicable.

All alternatives considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of soil and land capability impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

## 6.2.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on soil and land capability are assessed below.

### 6.2.2.1 Reduction and Loss of Land Capability

Construction activities such as vegetation clearing, excavations and vehicle movements will result in soil compaction and erosion, which decreases land capability. These decrease land capability, though soil resources are of low sensitivity and land capability is low.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-7: Significance of reduction and loss of land capability**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	1	4				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement a Stormwater Management Plan.</li> <li>• Drive only on approved access and service roads to avoid unnecessary compaction.</li> <li>• Clear vegetation only once construction is imminent, to reduce cleared areas and minimise erosion risk.</li> <li>• Store and maintain topsoil as per best practice in order to utilise it for rehabilitation of eroded areas.</li> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>• Park equipment and vehicles on impermeable surfaces or utilise drip trays to prevent hydrocarbon spills and monitor daily for fluid leaks.</li> <li>• Remediate hydrocarbon spills immediately.</li> <li>• Report hydrocarbon spills to the appropriate authorities if significant contamination of the environment occurs.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	1	4				

## 6.2.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase

Operational phase impacts on soil and land capability are assessed below.

### 6.2.3.1 Reduction and Loss of Land Capability

Operational activities by operational and maintenance staff as well as vehicle movements and ongoing vegetation trimming and / or removal, may continue to result in further soil compaction and erosion. These decrease land capability, though soil resources are of low sensitivity and land capability is low.



The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-8: Significance of reduction and loss of land capability**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Possible	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	5				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement a Stormwater Management Plan.</li> <li>• Drive only on approved access and service roads to avoid unnecessary compaction.</li> <li>• Park equipment and vehicles on impermeable surfaces or utilise drip trays to prevent hydrocarbon spills and monitor daily for fluid leaks.</li> <li>• Remediate hydrocarbon spills immediately.</li> <li>• Report hydrocarbon spills to the appropriate authorities if significant contamination of the environment occurs.</li> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>• Implement the Habitat Restoration Plan guided by the botanical specialist.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Possible	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	5				

### 6.2.4 Specialist Opinion

The specialist states that the proposed project will not result in the loss of high production arable land or the fragmentation of high productivity agricultural land uses. The specialist therefore recommends that the proposed project proceeds.

### 6.2.5 The No-Go Alternative

The No-Go alternative implies that the project is not implemented. In that case, the land use and land capability will not be affected, and grazing may continue on the entire site. As the specialist recommends that the project is approved, the No-Go alternative is not preferred. Both substation alternatives are equally acceptable from a soil and agricultural perspective.

## 6.3 Potential Freshwater Impacts

### 6.3.1 Introduction

The assessment is based on the Freshwater Specialist Study, which contains more detail (see Appendix D.1). The ToR for the study were to:

- Delineate, classify and assess freshwater features within 500 m of the project area;
- Identify and assessment project impacts on freshwater features;
- Recommend mitigation measures; and
- Compile an impact assessment report compliant with Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations (2014), relevant guidelines and/or the Environmental Assessment Protocols (GN R320 of 2020), as applicable.

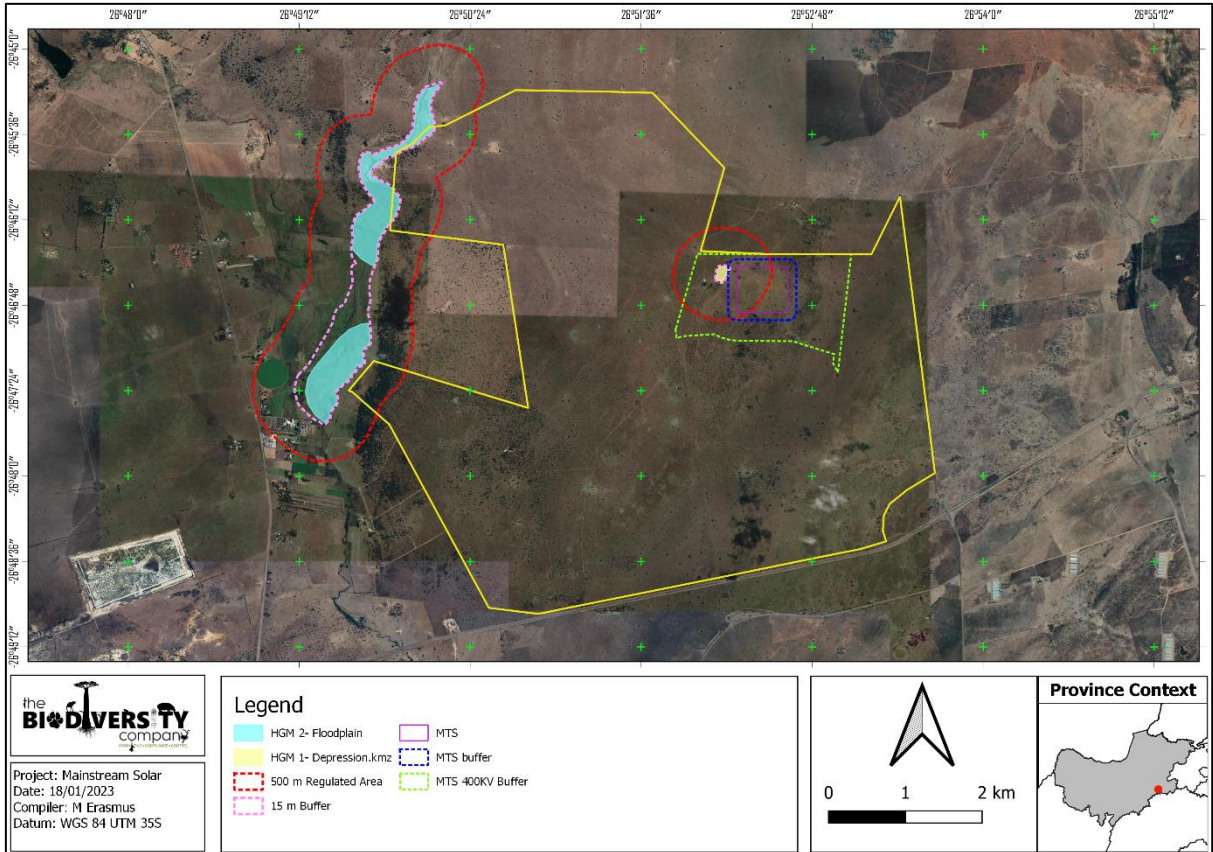
All alternatives considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of freshwater impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

### 6.3.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on the freshwater environment are assessed below.

#### 6.3.2.1 Degradation and Loss of Wetlands

The MTS is located approximately 90 metres east of the delineated wetland HGM1, which is outside the recommended 15 m buffer zone but still close enough to have some indirect impacts on the wetland.



**Figure 6-1 Location of MTS with relation to the Stilfontein cluster project area as well as the delineated wetlands inside the cluster area.**

The following potential impacts on functionality of the HGM 1 depression wetland were considered for the construction phase of the MTS (Table 6-9):

- Destruction, further loss, and fragmentation of the wetland;
- Clearing of vegetation;
- Hardening of soils inside the wetland catchment;
- Altering overland flows potentially causing erosion inside wetland; and
- Dust suppressants.

The main mitigation will be to stay completely clear of the wetland as well as the wetland buffer during the construction phase for the MTS. This will mitigate all direct impacts on the wetland.

Indirect impacts to the wetland can be mitigated by positioning pylons / towers beyond the watercourse, suspending cables between these systems. Should this not be feasible from an engineering (and safety) perspective, pylons / towers may be placed within the buffer area, but these must be kept to a minimum. No pylons / towers are permitted to be placed within the delineated watercourses. The alteration of overland

flows can be mitigated by implementing an integrated stormwater management plan to ensure that runoff into the wetland is minimised. To ensure that chemical pollution does not affect the wetland function the contractors used for the construction should have spill kits available prior to construction to ensure that any fuel, oil, or hazardous substance spills are cleaned up and discarded correctly.

**Table 6-9 Assessment of significance of potential impacts on the wetland functionality associated with the construction phase of the MTS project**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	- ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clearly demarcate the construction footprint and restrict all construction activities to within the proposed infrastructure area.</li> <li>Avoid wetland and buffer areas during the construction phase.</li> <li>Implement and strictly adhere to dust-reducing mitigation measures, including wetting of exposed soft soil surfaces and not conducting activities on windy days which will increase the likelihood of dust being generated.</li> <li>Revegetate any areas that are cleared during construction with indigenous vegetation to prevent erosion and reduce the likelihood of encroachment by alien invasive plant species upon completion of the MTS construction.</li> <li>Appropriately remove and store any topsoil that is stripped during construction for use during re-vegetation and decommissioning.</li> <li>Ensure pylons / towers are installed outside of delineated watercourses and features, although cables may be suspended above watercourses or features between these systems. Pylons / towers may be placed within the buffer area only where engineering or safety concerns require this, but these must be kept to a minimum. Should this be required, service tracks up to the pylons will be permissible.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	- ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

### 6.3.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase

Operational phase impacts on the freshwater environment are assessed below.

#### 6.3.3.1 Degradation of Wetlands

During the operational phase of the MTS, impacts are expected to be of low intensity but long duration. The main impacts are the traffic through the project area (Table 6-10). The following potential impacts were considered:

- Erosion inside wetland area due to overland flows;
- Drainage pattern changes; and
- Deposition of dust.

The erosion and water quality impairment within the wetland is considered to be **low** significance pre-mitigation and **low** significance post mitigation. This can be mitigated by ensuring that soils around the MTS can infiltrate water to the water table.

All proposed activities are expected to be long term (> 15 years) and have been considered “permanent” on this basis. At closure, decommissioning risks must be investigated and appropriately mitigated.

**Table 6-10 Assessment of significance of potential impacts on the wetland functionality associated with the operational phase of the MTS project**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement an effective Stormwater Management Plan.</li> <li>• Stormwater leaving the site should not be concentrated in a single exit drain but spread across multiple drains around the site each fitted with energy dissipaters (e.g. slabs of concrete with rocks cemented in).</li> <li>• Release only clean water into the environment.</li> <li>• Promote water infiltration into the ground around the MTS, adhering to the Eskom safety standards where applicable.</li> <li>• Re-vegetate denuded areas as soon as possible.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

### 6.3.4 Specialist Opinion

The specialist has assessed that residual impact posed by the project on wetlands is deemed *low*, and confirmed that the project is thus deemed acceptable.

It is expected that a General Authorisation in terms of NWA Section 21(c) and (i) water uses will be required prior to project construction.

### 6.3.5 The No-Go Alternative

The No-Go alternative implies that the project is not implemented, and the assessed impacts on wetlands will not be incurred. As the specialist assessed that project impacts are acceptable, the No-Go alternative is not preferred.

## 6.4 Potential Terrestrial Ecology Impacts

### 6.4.1 Introduction

The assessment is based on the Terrestrial Ecology Specialist Study, which contains more detail (see Appendix D.2). The ToR for the study were to:

- Undertake a desktop assessment of available terrestrial (fauna and flora) ecology datasets;
- Undertake a field survey for fauna (mammals, reptiles and amphibians) and flora, preferably during the rainy season between October and April;
- For fauna, compile expected and identified species list, identify Red Data or listed species and assess and delineate habitat and proximity to any protected or ecologically important areas;
- Determine and evaluate the status of the faunal environment in terms of ecological indicators, important biodiversity attributes (such as rare and endangered species, protected species, sensitive species and endemic species);
- Determine Red and Orange Data plant species, vegetation units and habitat types and discuss protected, endemic, exotic, alien invasive and culturally significant species. Consult local authorities;
- Discuss fauna in relation to floristic survey findings and consider the probability of occurrence for species not observed during field surveys, with a focus on protected and endemic species;

- Identify and delineate habitats and any unique or protected habitat features and sensitive habitats;
- Assess the significance of biodiversity impacts;
- Identify mitigation measures for the reduction of the significance of negative impacts (and enhancement of benefits) and re-rate the impact significance assuming the effective implementation of mitigation measures; and
- Compile a Report compliant with Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations (2014), relevant guidelines and/or the Environmental Assessment Protocols (GN R320 of 2020), as applicable.

Substation alternative locations considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of terrestrial ecology impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

### 6.4.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on terrestrial ecology are assessed below.

#### 6.4.2.1 Degradation and Loss of Habitat and Protected Species

Vegetation in the transmission line servitude and near the substation will be trimmed, and shrubs and trees will be removed to ensure sufficient clearance between vegetation and electrical infrastructure. Vegetation will be cleared and soil partially stripped in the substation footprint and, to a much smaller extent, grid line pylons.

The removal of vegetation reduces the extent of and fragments habitat and ecosystems. Soil stripping also removes the seedbank in the affected area, and the exposed areas are more susceptible to wind and water erosion.

This impact incorporates the degradation due to dust generation, assessed separately by the specialist.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-11: Significance of potential degradation and loss of habitat and protected species**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Medium-term	<b>Low</b>	Definite	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	2	<b>5</b>				
<p><b>Essential mitigation measures:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Demarcate the construction footprint with visible barriers (i.e. safety tape / fencing/ signage).</li> <li>● Restrict vegetation clearance to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>● Clear vegetation by hand cutting to avoid heavy machinery, as far as practically possible.</li> <li>● Utilise existing access routes and paths, where possible.</li> <li>● Limit construction of new roads as much as possible.</li> <li>● Avoid disturbance to rocky habitats.</li> <li>● Minimise the number (and size) of laydown, storage and staff facilities.</li> <li>● Remove all remaining construction materials once the construction phase ends.</li> <li>● Store topsoil stockpiles on flat ground and use bunds and/or other stabilisation methods (e.g., netting) to avoid erosion.</li> <li>● Obtain relocation or destruction permits before any protected trees (<i>Vachellia erioloba</i>) are relocated or destroyed.</li> <li>● Compile and implement a Hydrocarbon Spill Management Plan;</li> <li>● Compile and implement a Fire Management Plan.</li> <li>● Appoint a rehabilitation specialist to develop and implement a Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>● Rehabilitate areas as soon as they are no longer impacted by construction.</li> <li>● Utilise indigenous vegetation only for habitat rehabilitation.</li> </ul>								

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Return topsoil as soon as possible.</li> <li>Apply surplus topsoil / rehabilitation material to other areas in need of stabilisation and vegetation cover.</li> <li>Implement strict dust control for all roads and bare (unvegetated) areas.</li> <li>Reduce dust generated by vehicles and earth moving machinery, through wetting the soil surface (with non-potable water) and erecting speed limit signage to enforce speed limits.</li> <li>Prohibit the use of non-environmentally friendly dust suppressants to avoid pollution of water sources.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Definite	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-12: Significance of potential degradation and loss of habitat and protected species**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium-term	<b>Very low</b>	Definite	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				
<p><b>Essential mitigation measures:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Demarcate the construction footprint with physical barriers (i.e safety tape / fencing, signage).</li> <li>Restrict vegetation clearance to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>Clear vegetation by hand cutting to avoid heavy machinery, as far as practically possible.</li> <li>Utilise existing access routes and paths, where possible.</li> <li>Limit construction of new roads as much as possible.</li> <li>Avoid disturbance to rocky habitats.</li> <li>Minimise the number (and size) of laydown, storage and staff facilities.</li> <li>Remove all remaining construction materials once the construction phase ends.</li> <li>Store topsoil stockpiles on flat ground and use bunds and/or other stabilisation methods (e.g., netting) to avoid erosion.</li> <li>Obtain relocation or destruction permits before any protected trees (<i>Vachellia erioloba</i>) are relocated or destroyed.</li> <li>Compile and implement a Hydrocarbon Spill Management Plan;</li> <li>Compile and implement a Fire Management Plan.</li> <li>Appoint a rehabilitation specialist to develop and implement a Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>Rehabilitate areas as soon as they are no longer impacted by construction.</li> <li>Utilise indigenous vegetation only for habitat rehabilitation.</li> <li>Return topsoil as soon as possible.</li> <li>Apply surplus topsoil / rehabilitation material to other areas in need of stabilisation and vegetation cover.</li> <li>Implement strict dust control for all roads and bare (unvegetated) areas.</li> <li>Reduce dust generated by vehicles and earth moving machinery, through wetting the soil surface (with non-potable water) and erecting speed limit signage to enforce speed limits.</li> <li>Prohibit the use of non-environmentally friendly dust suppressants to avoid pollution of water sources.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Definite	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

**6.4.2.2 Spread of Alien and Invasive Species**

The disturbance of vegetation and soils and the movement of construction staff and vehicles onto and across the site increases the potential for alien and invasive vegetation to establish. This can exacerbate the degradation and loss of habitats and ecosystems on the site.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-13: Significance of spread of alien and invasive species**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Medium-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	2	2	<b>5</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement an Alien Vegetation Management Plan, including but not limited to identification of areas for action (if any), prescription of the necessary removal methods and frequencies, monitoring plan and requirements for updates.</li> <li>• Compile and implement a Waste Management Plan, including but not limited to:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Prioritize waste management such that all waste is collected, stored and disposed of adequately.</li> <li>○ Collect and dispose of all waste generated on site, preferably weekly but at least monthly, to prevent rodents and pests.</li> <li>○ Ensure waste storage bins have lids and are secured to prevent falling over.</li> <li>○ Compile and implement a pest control plan which precludes use of poison as a control measure.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

**6.4.2.3 Displacement and Loss of Fauna**

The removal of vegetation will result in the loss of habitat, forcing fauna to move into adjacent areas. Fauna will also move from the site due to increased disturbance from construction activities, such as noise, dust, vibration and human activity. This could result in overpopulation of adjacent habitats and increased competition for natural resources, which may cause further disruption to faunal populations by interfering with their movement and/or breeding.

Direct mortalities or potential injury could result from collisions with construction vehicles in the area. Increased traffic due to construction vehicles will increase the likelihood of collisions with fauna. Increased human presence on the site could also increase poaching.

The introduction of new diseases and feral species such as cats and dogs to the area is unlikely due to the proximity of the project area to adjacent settlements and nearby homesteads.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-14: Significance of displacement and loss of fauna**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Demarcate the construction footprint with physical barriers (i.e. safety tape / fencing / signage).</li> <li>• Restrict vegetation clearance to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>• Minimise vegetation clearing to the minimum required. Areas should be cleared and disturbed only as and when needed.</li> <li>• Provide environmental awareness training to all personnel and contractors to include the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Sensitive environmental receptors within the project area;</li> <li>○ Management requirements in the Environmental Authorisation and the EMPr;</li> <li>○ How to deal with any fauna species encountered during the construction process;</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Minimise the timing between clearing of an area and subsequent development to avoid fauna from re-entering the site to be disturbed.</li> <li>• Excavate holes / excavations on a needs only basis.</li> <li>• Cover open holes / excavations overnight to prevent fauna mortalities.</li> <li>• Restrict construction activities to one area at a time as far as possible, and be systematic, allowing fauna to move off site as activities progress.</li> </ul>								

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create a disturbance (one or two persons walk the area) prior to vegetation clearing activities in order for fauna to move off site (not more than 1 day in advance of clearing).</li> <li>Obtain permits for the relocation of animals as and if required.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

### 6.4.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase

Operational phase impacts on terrestrial ecology are assessed below.

#### 6.4.3.1 Degradation and Fragmentation of Habitat

Vegetation will continue to be trimmed in transmission line servitudes and near the substation. This will continue to affect habitat quality and connectivity, though to a limited degree as servitudes are narrow and retain some vegetative cover.

Natural areas adjacent to servitudes and associated infrastructure and facilities areas may experience degradation through dust deposition (which reduces the effectiveness of photosynthesis and pollination). Any unrehabilitated areas may also present sources of dust.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-15: Significance of degradation and fragmentation of habitat**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prohibit staff from bringing or removing any plant species (whether indigenous or exotic) to or from the project site to prevent the spread of exotic or invasive species or the illegal collection of plants.</li> <li>Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				

#### 6.4.3.2 Spread of Alien and Invasive Species

The movement of operations and maintenance staff and vehicles across the site may introduce or spread alien and invasive vegetation, though movement and disturbance will be much reduced compared to the construction phase. Alien vegetation will deteriorate habitat quality.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-16: Significance of spread of alien and invasive species**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								



	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>Implement the Waste Management Plan.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

### 6.4.3.3 Displacement and Loss of Fauna

Though disturbance on the site, such as noise, dust, vibration and human activity, will be much reduced compared to construction activities, it will lead to some ongoing disruption and displacement of fauna. Similarly, staff and vehicle movements are much reduced compared to the construction phase, but collisions of fauna with vehicles as well as poaching can result in fauna mortalities or injury.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-17: Significance of displacement and loss of fauna**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Medium-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	2	2	<b>5</b>				
<p><b>Essential mitigation measures:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Design outside lighting to limit impacts on fauna:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fit lighting fixtures with baffles, hoods or louvres and directed light downward.</li> <li>Direct outside lighting away from high sensitive areas such as the wetland.</li> <li>Avoid fluorescent and mercury vapor lighting.</li> <li>Utilize sodium vapor (yellow) lights wherever possible.</li> <li>Utilize motion detection lighting wherever possible to minimise the unnecessary illumination of areas.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Minimise traffic and the use of vehicle lights during the night.</li> <li>Minimise noise from dusk to dawn to minimize disturbances to amphibian species and nocturnal mammals.</li> <li>Obtain permits for the relocation of animals as and if required.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

### 6.4.4 Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase

Decommissioning phase impacts on terrestrial ecology are assessed below.

#### 6.4.4.1 Degradation and Fragmentation of Habitat

Operational phase impacts will persist until all structures and infrastructure has been removed and the affected areas have been rehabilitated.

Though the impact assessment provided below rates the impact of unavoidable site disturbance during the decommissioning phase, effective rehabilitation will re-create suitable habitat for fauna, allowing fauna to re-establish over time. As such, the ultimate outcome of rehabilitation, to be undertaken during and after decommissioning, will be a benefit.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-18: Significance of degradation and fragmentation of habitat**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limit closure and rehabilitation activities to the disturbed footprint areas only.</li> <li>• Declare all areas outside of the disturbed footprint as ‘no-go’ areas.</li> <li>• Avoid access to previously undisturbed or already rehabilitated areas.</li> <li>• Utilise indigenous vegetation for habitat rehabilitation.</li> <li>• Reduce dust generated by vehicles and earth moving machinery through wetting the soil surface (with non-potable water) and erecting speed limit signage to enforce speed limits.</li> <li>• Implement the Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

**6.4.4.2 Spread of Alien and Invasive Species**

The movement of decommissioning staff and vehicles across the site may introduce or spread alien and invasive vegetation. Denuded areas following the removal of infrastructure are at particular risk of being invaded by alien and invasive vegetation. Effective rehabilitation with indigenous vegetation is required to mitigate the risk long-term.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **insignificant**.

**Table 6-19: Significance of spread of alien and invasive species**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>• Update the Alien Vegetation Management Plan to include estimated monitoring frequency post-closure and when the plan is no longer required to be implemented, to be compliant with legislated requirements at the time.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Possible	<b>INSIGNIFICANT</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **insignificant**.

**6.4.5 Specialist Opinion**

The specialist has assessed that the project impacts can be effectively mitigated to an acceptable residual impact. Development within areas of high sensitivity is not regarded as a fatal flaw for the project and can be effectively mitigated. The 400 kV transmission line can be placed anywhere within the identified MTS 400kV tie-in buffer located between the MTS and the existing Hermes-Pluto 1 and 2 powerlines. It is preferred that the wetland area is avoided, however spanning the wetlands is also acceptable with mitigation. All mitigation measures must be implemented.

## 6.4.6 No-Go Alternative

The No-Go alternative implies that the project is not implemented, and the assessed impacts on terrestrial ecology will not be incurred. As the specialist concludes that the project impact is acceptable, the No-Go alternative is not preferred.

## 6.5 Potential Avifauna Impacts

### 6.5.1 Introduction

The assessment is based on the Avifauna Specialist Study, which contains more detail (see Appendix D.3). The ToR for the study were to:

- Describe the affected environment from an avifaunal perspective;
- Discuss gaps in baseline data and other limitations;
- Undertake field surveys;
- Compare the site sensitivity recorded in the field with the sensitivity classification in the DFFE National Screening Tool and adjust if necessary;
- Identify and assess the potential impacts of the proposed development on avifauna;
- Recommend appropriate mitigation measures; and
- Compile an impact assessment report; and
- Compile a Report compliant with Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations (2014), relevant guidelines and/or the Environmental Assessment Protocols (GN R320 of 2020), as applicable.

All alternatives considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of avifauna impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

### 6.5.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on avifauna are assessed below.

#### 6.5.2.1 Bird Displacement due to Disturbance

Construction may disturb birds, including priority species Black-winged Kite, Gabar Goshawk, Greater Kestrel, Helmeted Guineafowl, Lanner Falcon, Northern Black Korhaan, Pied Crow, Spotted Eagle-Owl and White-backed Vulture. Disturbance could lead to breeding failure if the disturbance happens during a critical part of the breeding cycle or even permanent abandonment of nests. Terrestrial species and other powerline priority avifaunal species breeding and roosting on the existing Hermes/Pluto 400kV overhead powerlines are most likely to be affected by displacement. However, the displacement will be short-term and unlikely to continue beyond the construction phase.

No White-backed Vulture breeding activity was recorded at the assessment site, and the vultures should be able to shift their roosting to another area in natural grassland habitat to the north for the duration of the construction phase.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-20: Significance of potential bird displacement due to disturbance**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	High	Short-term	<b>Low</b>	Definite	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	3	1	<b>5</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restrict construction activities to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>• Implement best practice measures to control noise and dust.</li> <li>• Utilise existing access roads and keep the construction of new roads to a minimum.</li> <li>• Demarcate access roads clearly.</li> <li>• Prohibit off-road driving.</li> <li>• Undertake regular ECO audits / inspections to report on compliance with the EMPr (including compliance with noise control mechanisms).</li> <li>• Include avifauna impacts of off-road driving in the construction staff environmental awareness training.</li> <li>• Retain or relocate existing waterpoints to ensure at least four waterpoints are retained within the Stilfontein Project Cluster, one of which must be in the north west and one in the south east of the Cluster.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Definite	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				

**6.5.2.2 Bird Displacement due to Habitat Transformation**

Construction activities could impact on birds breeding, foraging and roosting in or in close proximity of the proposed substations areas and the overhead powerlines through transformation of habitat, which could result in permanent displacement in the case of the substations. However, the area of the proposed substations to be transformed is small compared to the available habitat in the broader area.

In the case of the overhead power lines, the direct habitat transformation is limited to the pylon footprints and the narrow access road/track under the transmission lines. The habitat in the study area is relatively uniform from a bird perspective. The loss of habitat of a relatively small quantity of the natural habitat for priority species due to direct habitat transformation associated with the construction of the proposed overhead lines is thus relatively limited.

The impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **low**.

**Table 6-21: Significance of potential bird displacement due to habitat transformation**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restrict construction activities to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>• Implement best practice measures to control noise and dust.</li> <li>• Demarcate access roads clearly.</li> <li>• Prohibit off-road driving.</li> <li>• Minimise construction of new roads as far as possible.</li> <li>• Retain or relocate existing waterpoints to ensure at least four waterpoints are retained within the Stilfontein Project Cluster, one of which must be in the north west and one in the south east of the Cluster and two in the MTS site.</li> <li>• Implement (strictly) the mitigation measures made in the terrestrial ecology specialist assessment.</li> <li>• Appoint a rehabilitation specialist to develop and implement a Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>• Conduct site inspections to monitor the progress of rehabilitation in accordance with the Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>• Implement adaptive management to ensure vegetation rehabilitation goals are met.</li> </ul>								

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

### 6.5.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase

Operational phase impacts on avifauna are assessed below.

#### 6.5.3.1 Bird Mortality due to Collisions with Transmission Lines

Collisions are the biggest threat posed by powerlines to birds in southern Africa (van Rooyen, 2004). Heavy-bodied birds with limited manoeuvrability, such as bustards, storks, cranes and various species of waterbirds and, to a lesser extent, vultures are most heavily impacted.

Using flight diverters is associated with a very significant decrease in bird mortality (55–94%). The priority species with a medium to high likelihood of occurrence in the assessment area which could be affected by transmission line collisions are Black-headed Heron, Egyptian Goose, Spotted Eagle-Owl, Western Cattle Egret and White-backed Vulture.

With the exception of White-backed Vultures, none of the potentially affected priority species are currently classified as threatened. In the case of White-backed Vultures, the collision threat is limited by the short length of the proposed overhead transmission lines. The highest collision risk for the vultures would be if they the congregate around a carcass in the assessment area, which would be unlikely as the livestock will be largely displaced by solar PV arrays in the assessment area.

The impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low** partnership

**Table 6-22: Significance of potential bird mortality due to collisions with transmission lines**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Install Eskom-approved Bird Flight Diverters on the entire 132kV grid connection and on the earthwire, according to the relevant Eskom guideline.</li> <li>• These devices must be installed as soon as the conductors are strung.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Possible	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

#### 6.5.3.2 Bird Mortality due to Electrocution in Substation

Electrocution occurs when a bird is perched or attempts to perch on an electrical structure and causes an electrical short circuit by physically bridging the air gap (clearance) between live components and/or live and earthed components. The electrocution risk is largely determined by the design of the electrical hardware.

Electrocutions within the proposed substation are possible, however, the likelihood of this impact on the more sensitive Red List priority species is remote, as these species are unlikely to regularly utilise the infrastructure within the substation yard for perching or roosting.

The priority species with a medium to high likelihood of occurrence in the assessment area that could be affected by electrocution are the Amur Falcon, Black-headed Heron, Black-winged Kite, Common Buzzard, Egyptian Goose, Greater Kestrel, Hadada Ibis, Helmeted Guineafowl, Lanner Falcon, Lesser Kestrel, Pied Crow and Spotted Eagle-Owl.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-23: Significance of potential bird mortality due to electrocution in substation**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Possible	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Investigate electrocution incidents and implement appropriate mitigation by insulating any hardware that causes repeat electrocutions.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Improbable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

**6.5.3.3 Bird Mortality due to Electrocution on 400 kV Transmission Line**

Electrocution occurs when a bird is perched or attempts to perch on an electrical structure and causes an electrical short circuit by physically bridging the air gap (clearance) between live components and/or live and earthed components. The electrocution risk is largely determined by the design of the electrical hardware.

The existing 400kV Hermes/Pluto 1 and 2 transmission lines in the assessment area do not pose a material risk of electrocution to birds, as the clearances between potentially lethal components are too wide to bridge even for the largest birds. The same is expected to apply to the new 400 kV LILO lines.

The impact is assessed to be **insignificant**.

**6.5.4 Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase**

Decommissioning phase impacts on avifauna are assessed below.

**6.5.4.1 Bird Displacement due to Disturbance**

Decommissioning activities on the site are likely to impact on birds breeding, foraging and roosting at or near the development area through disturbance, which could result in temporary or permanent displacement of birds. Priority species with a medium to high likelihood of occurrence in the assessment area which could be affected are Black-winged Kite, Greater Kestrel, Lanner Falcon, Pied Crow and White-backed Vulture.

It is likely that avifauna will be temporarily displaced in the footprint area of the proposed project, either completely or more likely partially (reduced densities) during the decommissioning phase, due to the disturbance associated with the decommissioning activities. This is likely to affect breeding residents most.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-24: Significance of potential displacement of birds due to disturbance**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	High	Short-term	<b>Low</b>	Definite	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	3	1	<b>5</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limit the area of activity to the immediate footprint of the infrastructure as possible.</li> <li>• Demarcate access roads clearly.</li> <li>• Prohibit off-road driving.</li> <li>• Restrict access to areas outside of the site boundary.</li> <li>• Implement best practice measures to control noise and dust.</li> <li>• Undertake regular ECO audits / inspections to report on compliance with the EMPr.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Definite	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				

### 6.5.5 Specialist Opinion

The specialist has assessed that no fatal flaws were discovered at the project site during the investigations. The specialist therefore recommends that from an avifauna perspective the activity can be authorised, on condition that the proposed mitigation measures are implemented. Tie-in of powerlines anywhere along the substation are deemed acceptable.

### 6.5.6 The No-Go Alternative

The No-Go alternative implies that the project is not implemented, and the assessed impacts on avifauna will not be incurred. As the specialist recommends that the project is authorised, the No-Go alternative is not preferred.

## 6.6 Potential Socio-Economic Impacts

### 6.6.1 Introduction

The assessment is based on the Socio-Economic Specialist Study, which contains more detail (see Appendix D.5). The ToR for the study were to:

- Compile a socio-economic baseline of the study area, based on existing secondary public data and any primary data collected by the social specialist;
- Identify the potential social and economic impacts (including benefits) associated with the project, including, inter alia, impacts associated with loss of farmland (grazing), contribution to economic growth and job creation, quality of life, local community income and influx of workers / job seekers;
- Assess the direct, indirect and cumulative impacts of the proposed project, including alternatives, on the socio-economic environment using a prescribed impact assessment methodology;
- Recommend practicable mitigation measures to minimise / reduce impacts and enhance benefits and monitoring requirements, where possible;
- Identify and map potentially sensitive areas, buffer areas and preferred locations, if applicable;
- Compile an SIA Report compliant with Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations (2014), relevant guidelines and Part A of the Environmental Assessment Protocols (GN R320 of 2020), where applicable; and

- Update the SIA Report based on and provide responses to comments from stakeholders and/or the Competent Authority.
- All alternatives considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of socio-economic impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

## 6.6.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on the socio-economic environment are assessed below.

### 6.6.2.1 Social Disruption and Change in Social Dynamics

The establishment of the solar project may attract different groups of people to the area:

- Non-local workers / professionals hired for the construction phase of the project where expertise is not available in the local area; and
- People moving opportunistically into the area in the hope of finding employment or exploiting other commercial opportunities.

The temporary influx of people during construction, leading to short-term growth in population size, may lead to changes in social dynamics (WWF, 2015). This indirect impact of the project is common to most medium to large scale projects in South Africa and much of the world. It cannot be addressed by the developers alone and will require management of resources by the municipality as well.

The impact intensity and likelihood are considered comparatively low for this project as:

- It is expected that none or very few workers need to be hired from outside of the region, as sufficient workers should be available from the three towns located within 35 km of the project area. As such, most workers could operate from their home base;
- The presence of several towns and a considerable population within 35 km of the project area will dilute the effect of migrants moving into the area; and
- The region, though located within the Klerksdorp REDZ, has not yet seen any renewable energy development. As such, it is not (yet) a focus area for in-migration.

The rollout of renewable energy may also cause socio-political disruption/protest. The project does not appear to overlay ecologically sensitive areas (as identified by SANBI GIS), is located on private land and not linked to potential job losses at existing local (e.g. power generation) facilities or agricultural ventures. Stakeholders contacted during the SIA did not voice concerns regarding the project (see Section 5.2.3). Disruptions due to social or environmental concerns are thus considered unlikely.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation reduces to **insignificant**.



**Table 6-25: Significance of social disruption and change in social dynamics**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium	<b>VERY LOW</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	-ve	<b>Medium</b>
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clearly publicise and implement a local recruitment policy.</li> <li>Work together with impartial local representatives to identify local people during the recruitment process.</li> <li>Consult with the municipality regarding the capacity of existing services and infrastructure (e.g. provision of water, electricity, waste removal, sanitation and housing) to cope if significant numbers of additional workers are brought into the area during the construction period.</li> <li>Consider supporting projects that improve local services and infrastructure and/or deal with social problems or conflicts through the social upliftment programme, if the need arises.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Medium	<b>VERY LOW</b>	Possible	<b>INSIGNIFICANT</b>	-ve	<b>Medium</b>
	1	1	2	<b>4</b>				

**6.6.2.2 Reduced Quality of Life and Increased Risks due to Construction near Residences**

Several residences are located within 0.75 km and 2 km of the Stilfontein Cluster boundary. Construction can reduce quality of life of residents through noise and dust from construction activities and/or increase the risk of crime due to increased activity in the area, possibly attracting opportunists and littering by construction crews.

Construction noise will be confined primarily to daylight hours and weekdays and is attenuated by the distance between the project site and (offsite) residences (>750 m). Air emissions from construction activities are not expected to cause nuisance or health impacts as dust levels are not likely to exceed normal dust levels associated with construction activities and both will be limited in extent and duration. Emissions from vehicles and other equipment are likely to be low and disperse quickly in the open space.

Certain project characteristics will mitigate security risks, including that no workers will be accommodated on site and that the site will be secured and access controlled. The project is not expected to trigger a significant influx of people into the area. Other construction-related nuisances and risks, such as littering and disruption of any service infrastructure, can be managed through standard contractor procedures.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-26: Significance of reduced quality of life and increased risks due to construction near residences**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	High	Short-term	<b>Low</b>	Possible	<b>VERY LOW</b>	- ve	<b>High</b>
	1	3	1	<b>5</b>				
<b>Key essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Liaise with nearby residents (up to ~2 km from the project boundary) before and during construction to inform them of construction status and discuss safety management measures to reduce security risks.</li> <li>Maintain a visible security presence on site.</li> <li>Implement a grievance mechanism at the start of the construction phase.</li> <li>Communicate and implement a compensation procedure in the event of damages directly linked to the construction.</li> <li>Control site access.</li> </ul>								

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide transportation to site for workers.</li> <li>• Declare areas outside of the construction site as no-go areas for construction staff.</li> <li>• Erect and regularly inspect a boundary fence.</li> <li>• Regularly inspect the project area and surrounding area for signs of illegal activity.</li> <li>• Regularly clean any litter from the project area and surrounding area.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Improbable	<b>INSIGNIFICANT</b>	– ve	<b>High</b>
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				

The impact can be reversed, as no or very few security risks are associated with the operation phase, when on-site activities significantly scale back.

### 6.6.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase

The operation of the MTS and transmission lines is not expected to have socio-economic impacts (other than those separately assessed for the PV facilities).

### 6.6.4 Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase

The decommissioning of the MTS and transmission lines is not expected to have socio-economic impacts (other than those separately assessed for the PV facilities).

### 6.6.5 Specialist Opinion

The specialist has assessed that the project has acceptable socio-economic impacts. The specialist recommends that from a socio-economic perspective the project is authorised and preferred to the No-Go alternative. Both 11-33/132 kV substation location alternatives and tie-in of powerlines anywhere along the substation are deemed acceptable.

### 6.6.6 The No-Go Alternative

The project has significant socio-economic benefits at the local and regional scale which outweigh the potential negative socio-economic impacts. The No-Go alternative is thus considered less desirable than proceeding with the project.

## 6.7 Potential Heritage and Palaeontology Impacts

### 6.7.1 Introduction

The assessment is based on the Heritage and Palaeontology Specialist Study, which contains more detail (see Appendix D.6). The ToR for the study were to:

- Undertake a desktop screening study to gather data and compile a background history of the area, including archaeological sites, historical sites and known graves;
- Undertake field work to understand the heritage character of the study area. Record, photograph and describe any heritage sites of significance and document GPS locations;
- Undertake a Phase 1 study in line with the high and very high palaeontological sensitivity rating in SAHRA’s palaeontological sensitivity map;

- Identify any significant project impacts, rate impact significance and recommend mitigation measures should sensitive sites be identified during the field visit;
- Compile a Report compliant with Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations (2014), relevant guidelines and/or the Environmental Assessment Protocols (GN R320 of 2020), as applicable; and
- Submit required documentation to SAHRA as the commenting authority.

All alternatives considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of heritage and palaeontology impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

### 6.7.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on the heritage environment are assessed below.

#### 6.7.2.1 Loss of Heritage and Palaeontology Resources

The disturbance and removal of topsoil and vegetation and establishment of infrastructure and facilities during construction can damage and destroy heritage features should any occur in the area. Isolated Stone Age scatters recorded across the project area are out of context and scattered too sparsely to be of significance. A few built environment features recorded in the cluster area were found to have no aesthetic, historical or architectural potential and the sites are of low significance and require no pre construction mitigation if they are disturbed by the final project footprint. As no heritage sites of significance occur within the project area, no significant impacts to heritage resources are expected.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-27: Significance of potential loss of heritage / palaeontology resources**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Possible	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Employ an ECO to monitor the construction activities.</li> <li>• Implement a chance find procedure for palaeontology and heritage finds.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Improbable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

#### 6.7.2.2 Loss of Fossils

The disturbance and removal of topsoil and vegetation and trenching and other earthworks for the establishment of infrastructure and facilities during construction can damage and destroy fossils should any occur sufficiently near the surface in the area.

However, no fossils were found above ground during the site visit. Fossils that may be present below ground are trace fossils such as stromatolites. They are common in the Malmani Subgroup and are traces of microbial activity, not fossils of the microbes (bacteria and algae), which reduces their scientific value. Recovery and safe storage of any such trace fossils in a research institute or museum for future research would represent a positive impact.

The impact is assessed to be **insignificant** with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-28: Significance of potential loss of fossils**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Improbable	<b>INSIGNIFICANT</b>	- ve	High
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Put aside and photograph any fossils found during excavations and send pictures to a palaeontologist to assess their scientific importance.</li> <li>If deemed important, the palaeontologist must obtain a SAHRA permit and remove stromatolites to a recognised repository.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Possible	<b>INSIGNIFICANT</b>	+ ve	High
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				

### 6.7.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase

Operational activities are not expected to impact on heritage resources.

### 6.7.4 Specialist Opinion

The specialist has assessed that the project area is of low heritage potential and no fossils are visible on the land surface. Due to the nature of the environment, there is no discernible difference in the substation alternatives. The impact on heritage resources can be mitigated to an acceptable level and the specialist recommends that from a heritage perspective the project should be authorised.

### 6.7.5 The No-Go Alternative

The No-Go alternative implies that the project is not implemented. In that case, heritage resources will not be affected. As the site was deemed to be of low heritage potential and the specialist recommends that the project is approved, the No-Go alternative is not preferred.

## 6.8 Potential Visual Impacts

### 6.8.1 Introduction

The assessment is based on the Visual Specialist Study, which contains more detail (see Appendix D.7). The ToR for the study were to:

- Describe the baseline visual characteristics of the study area, including landform, visual character and sense of place, and place this in a regional context;
- Identify potential impacts of the project on the visual environment through analysis and synthesis of visual exposure, visual absorption capacity, sensitivity of viewers (visual receptors), viewing distance and visibility and landscape integrity;
- Model glare generated by the proposed PV arrays;
- Assess potential visual and sense of place impacts of the project using SRK’s impact assessment methodology;
- Identify and assess the direct, indirect and cumulative impacts (pre- and post-mitigation) of the proposed project (and alternatives, if applicable) on visual resources in relation to other proposed and existing developments in the surrounding area;

- Recommend practicable mitigation measures to avoid and/or minimise impacts and/or optimise benefits; and
- Compile a Report compliant with Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations (2014), relevant guidelines and/or the Environmental Assessment Protocols (GN R320 of 2020), as applicable.
- All alternatives considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of visual impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

### 6.8.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on the visual environment are assessed below.

#### 6.8.2.1 Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by Construction Activities

Visual impacts will be generated by construction activities such as stripping of vegetation, bulk earthworks (which can generate dust) and from construction infrastructure, plant, and materials on site. Dust generated during construction will be visually unappealing and may detract from the visual quality (sense of place) of the area. These impacts are typically limited to the immediate area surrounding the construction site, during the construction period.

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation is reduced to **very low**.

**Table 6-29: Altered sense of place and visual intrusion caused by construction activities**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	High	Short-term	<b>Low</b>	Definite	<b>LOW</b>	-ve	High
	1	3	1	<b>5</b>				
<b>Essential Mitigation Measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limit vegetation clearance and the footprint of construction to what is absolutely essential.</li> <li>• Consolidate the footprint of the construction camp to a functional minimum.</li> <li>• Avoid excavation, handling and transport of materials which may generate dust under very windy conditions.</li> <li>• Cover stockpiled aggregates and sand to minimise dust generation.</li> <li>• Implement dust suppression on access roads during dry conditions.</li> <li>• Keep construction site tidy.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	-ve	High
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				

### 6.8.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase

Operational phase impacts on the visual environment are assessed below.

#### 6.8.3.1 Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by the Main Transmission Substation

The MTS will be of a different form to the few farmsteads dotted across the project site. The 36 ha development footprint of the MTS is also incongruent with the size of the few structures that exist on the current site, and as such will alter the sense of place and scenic value of the site and the beyond, to the north.

The visibility of the MTS will be moderate and, therefore, will present as a visual intrusion to receptors in the area surrounding the footprint.

The impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-30: Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by the Main Transmission Substation**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	Medium	Definite	<b>MEDIUM</b>	-ve	High
	1	2	3	6				
<b>Essential Mitigation Measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Minimise the on-site substation footprint, if possible.</li> <li>Ensure that any built structures within the on-site substation footprint blend into the landscape.</li> <li>Retain or re-establish natural vegetation around the on-site substation as far as practically possible.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	Medium	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	-ve	High
	1	2	3	6				

**6.8.3.2 Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by the Transmission Lines**

There are two existing 400 kV powerlines traversing the sites that are expected to have inured receptors to powerlines traversing the landscape. However, the addition of the Loop in – Loop out lines with a height of 32m into the landscape will contrast with, and diminish, the existing natural and rural sense of place and scenic value that the project site, and the area to the north.

Visual receptors will be located at least 2 km from the transmission lines and associated pylons, and therefore may have partial visibility of the pylons in the middleground or foreground, which will be experienced as visually intrusive.

The impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-31: Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by the Transmission lines**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	Medium	Definite	<b>MEDIUM</b>	-ve	High
	1	2	3	6				
<b>Essential Mitigation Measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not install or affix lights on pylons.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	Medium	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	-ve	High
	1	2	3	6				
	1	1	3	5				

**6.8.3.3 Altered Visual Quality caused by Light Pollution at Night**

It is anticipated that lighting will be installed at the MTS to improve visibility for security.

The installation of lighting is anticipated to generate nightglow that currently does not emanate from the natural, undeveloped site. As such, the introduction of lighting on the site alters the sense of place and visual quality to surrounding receptors. Nightglow may become more intense to farmstead receptors

currently located some distance from the nightglow emanating from the towns of Stilfontein, Khuma and Klerksdorp. This can significantly alter the visual quality of the surrounding area.

The impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-32: Altered visual quality caused by light pollution at night**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	Medium	Definite	<b>MEDIUM</b>	-ve	High
	1	2	3	6				
<b>Essential Mitigation Measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce the height of lighting masts to a workable minimum.</li> <li>• Direct lighting inwards and downwards to limit light pollution.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	Medium	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	-ve	High
	1	2	3	6				

### 6.8.4 Specialist Opinion

The specialist has assessed that construction and operation phase visual impacts are deemed to be acceptable on the assumption that the mitigation measures are implemented and noting the location of the project in a designated REDZ. Both 11-33/132 kV substation location alternatives and tie-in of powerlines anywhere along the substation are deemed acceptable. On this basis, the specialist recommends that from a visual perspective the project is authorised.

### 6.8.5 The No-Go Alternative

The No Go alternative entails that the project is not developed. Forgoing the development means that the sense of place will not be altered, no visual intrusion or light pollution will be experienced, i.e. the visual impacts of this project would not be realised. However, it would also mean that no renewable energy will be generated by this project. As the project was deemed acceptable, the No-Go alternative is not preferred.

## 6.9 Potential Traffic Impacts

### 6.9.1 Introduction

Traffic impacts are discussed and assessed in the sections below.

All alternatives considered (see Table 3-1) do not affect the significance of traffic impacts in the Construction and Operation Phases.

### 6.9.2 Assessment of Impacts: Construction Phase

Construction phase impacts on traffic are assessed below. Since the N12 (which affords access to the site) is a national road designed to accommodate all legal vehicle types, it is assumed that the structural integrity of the road pavement will not be affected by vehicles accessing the project site.

Main access to the MTS project site will be from the N12 as per Figure 1-3. The dimensions of the main access road and internal access roads are included in Section 3.5.4.

### 6.9.2.1 Trip Generation Causing Congestion during the Construction Phase

Construction phase traffic will comprise:

- Vehicles (typically trucks) delivering materials and components to the site. Deliveries will occur throughout the construction phase and may occur at higher frequency during certain construction periods. While trip generation cannot be precisely estimated at this stage, for a similar plant KMA (2016) estimated that construction phase traffic will peak at approximately 10 large delivery vehicles and 40 to 50 concrete trucks (delivering premix) per day while the facility slabs are being cast, reducing to about 20 to 30 large delivery vehicles per day while the electrical reticulation is being installed;
- Vehicles transporting construction staff to site. As no staff will be accommodated on site, the estimated ~220 construction staff will travel to and from site. Transport arrangements will be made by the contractor(s). Assuming that workers are transported in vehicles with an average capacity of 5 passengers, some 40 vehicle (return) movements per day are anticipated; and
- Abnormal load vehicles delivering oversize components or construction vehicles to undertake specialised works on site. Construction vehicles typically remain on site until no longer needed.

At peak construction, a total of ~100 daily traffic movements are estimated. If concrete is batched on site, the estimated vehicle movements reduce to ~60 per day. Substation transformers and certain other components are likely to be abnormal loads, requiring special arrangements.

The project site is directly accessible from the N12, a dual carriageway national road with a wide median, wide gravel shoulders, suitable geometry and good sight distances. National roads are designed to accommodate large vehicles and traffic volumes. Rush hour commuter congestion is experienced at the interchange of the N12 and R502, just east of the project area, which leads to the residential area of Khuma south of the project area. Capacity on other sections and at other times is good (i-traffic, 2022).

Two existing gravel roads provide at grade access off the northern carriageway of the N12 to the project site; these intersections are approximately 2 km apart, each at 90° angle to the N12 on flat (level gradient) sections of the road. Access 2 is approximately 2 km west of the N12 / R502 interchange (see Figure 6-2), far exceeding the recommended minimum access separation (spacing) of 350 m on roads with design speed of up to 120 km/h (see Figure 6-3). No other accesses are located in the area. Sight distances are also very good (see Figure 6-4). The existing gravel road Access 1 (see Figure 6-2) will be



formalised as per the layout design in

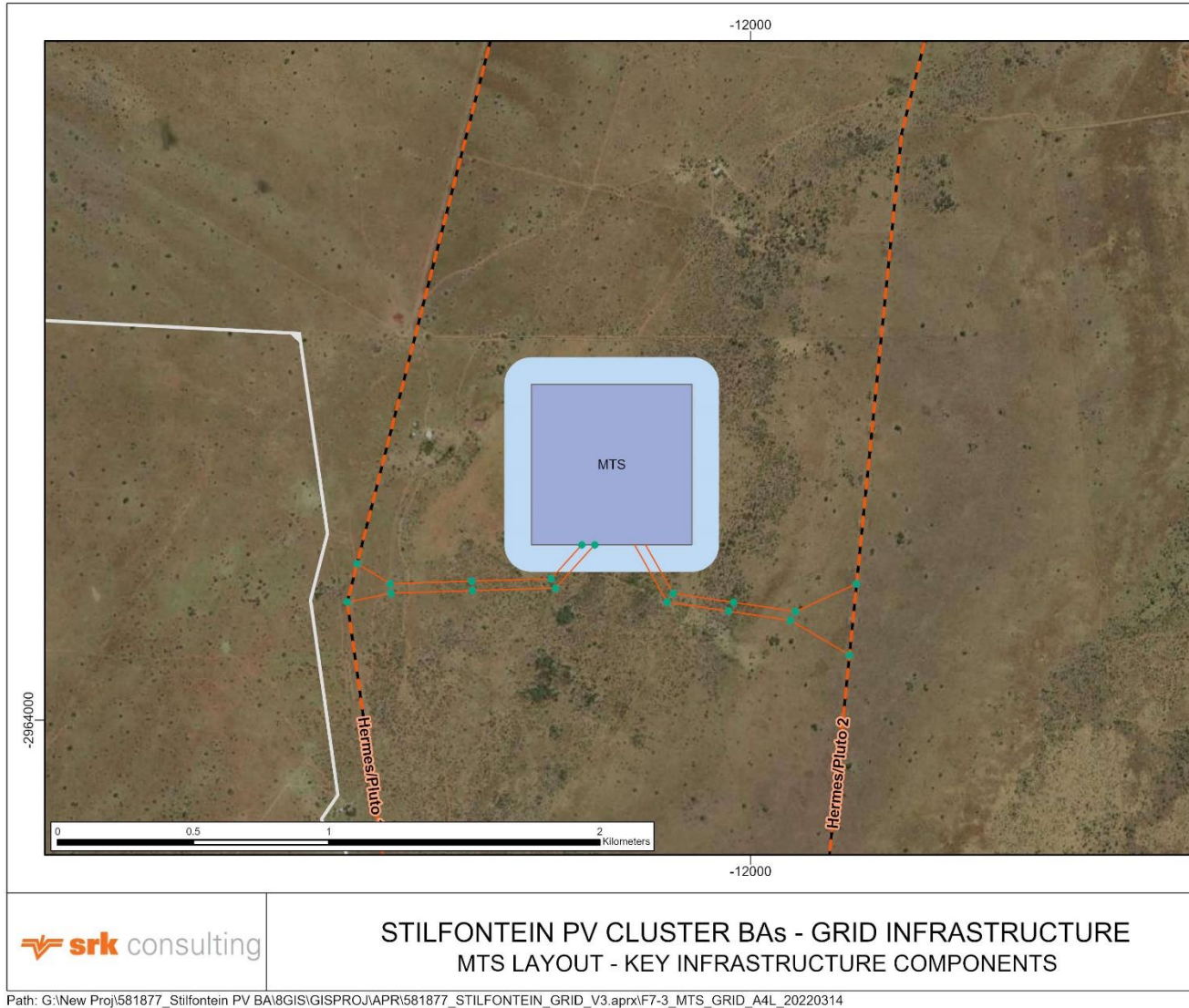
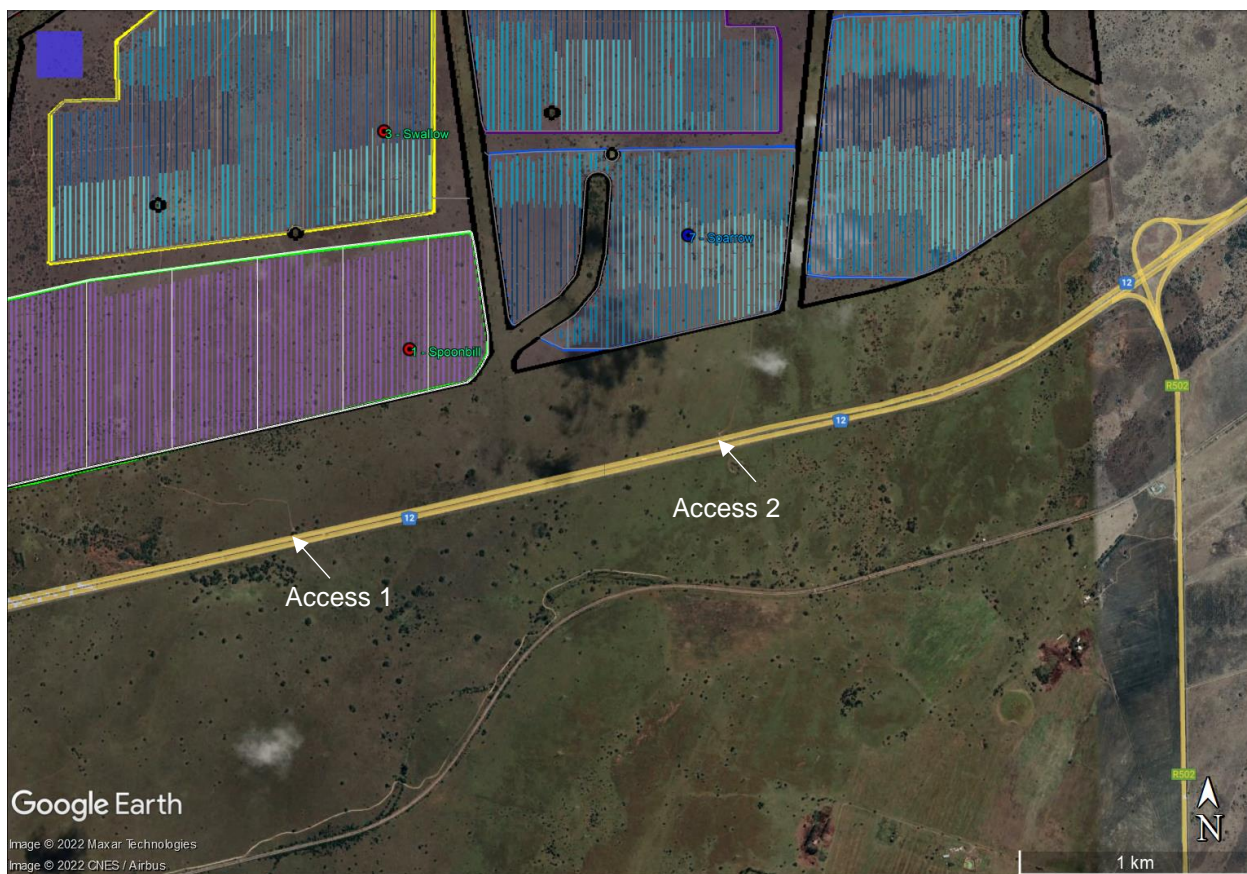


Figure 7-3). No public roads other than the N12 would be utilised by construction vehicles in the project vicinity.

Noting that other existing intersections on the N12 are likely to accommodate far more traffic than will be generated by the project, it is anticipated that with appropriate upgrade(s)<sup>29</sup> of the intersection(s) it is likely that the Level of Service (i.e. congestion and associated waiting times) during the Construction Phase will be acceptable.

The additional volume of traffic generated during the construction phase is significant but temporary. The N12 provides direct access to the site and is designed for heavy vehicles, though accesses require formalisation. Construction traffic does not impact on other local roads, accesses or communities, as none are located close to the project site.

<sup>29</sup> Site access road intersections with the N12 will require improvement to accommodate the anticipated number of heavy vehicles in a safe manner. As the N12 is a dual carriageway, access will be a left in left out configuration, off the northern carriageway. Sufficient space must be allowed at the access point to ensure that vehicles do not queue while exiting the N12.



**Figure 6-2: Site access**

**Table 6.5: Recommended minimum access separations**

Design speed (km/h)	Upstream access class	
	Unsignalised marginal	All other access types
40	20	80
50	35	110
60	50	130
70	70	175
80	100	200
100	170	300
120	250	350

**Figure 6-3: Recommended minimum access separations**

Sources: (KMA, 2016)



**Figure 6-4: Sight distances at Access 1 to the east (top) and west (bottom)**

The impact is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation reduces to **very low**.

**Table 6-33: Significance of potential trip generation during construction**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	High	Short-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	3	1	<b>5</b>				
<b>Essential mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Design and construct an appropriate and formalised access to the site from the N12, if and when the project is awarded preferential bidder status.</li> <li>• Liaise with the appropriate road authorities to coordinate access improvements and erect road signage on the N12 near the site access warning of possible construction vehicles.</li> <li>• Inform local road authorities and road users before unusual traffic is generated, e.g. high volumes or abnormal loads.</li> <li>• Obtain abnormal load permits if required.</li> <li>• Compile a road maintenance plan.</li> <li>• Stagger deliveries to the site as far as possible.</li> <li>• Schedule deliveries outside of commuter peak hours, especially for large vehicles / abnormal loads.</li> <li>• Consider scheduling shift changes to occur outside peak hours.</li> </ul>								

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	- ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

**6.9.3 Assessment of Impacts: Operational Phase**

Operational phase impacts on traffic are assessed below.

**6.9.3.1 Trip Generation Causing Congestion during the Operational Phase**

Operational phase traffic will comprise:

- Vehicles transporting ~20 operations staff to site daily. If staff travel in private vehicles, up to 20 light vehicles would access the site daily; and
- Infrequent access by cleaning, maintenance and delivery vehicles.

In the order of 15 - 25 traffic movements per day will be generated by the PV plant during the operation phase, which is deemed negligible. Operational phase traffic will use accesses upgraded and formalised during the construction phase.

The impact is assessed to be *insignificant*.

Regular N12 access maintenance will be required during the operational phase.

**6.9.4 Assessment of Impacts: Decommissioning Phase**

Decommissioning phase impacts on traffic are assessed below.

**6.9.4.1 Traffic Generation Causing Congestion during the Decommissioning Phase**

Decommissioning phase traffic will be similar to the construction traffic, with the exception of concrete premix trucks. As such, at peak decommissioning, ~40 daily traffic movements are anticipated, of which ~50% will be heavy vehicles.

Decommissioning phase traffic will use accesses upgraded and formalised during the construction phase and maintained during the operational phase.

The additional volume of traffic generated during the decommissioning phase is significant but temporary. The N12 provides direct access to the site and is designed for heavy vehicles.

The impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-34: Significance of potential trip generation during decommissioning**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Short-term	<b>Very low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	- ve	High
	1	2	1	<b>4</b>				
<p><b>Essential mitigation measures:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inform local road authorities and road users before unusual traffic is generated, e.g. high volumes or abnormal loads.</li> <li>• Obtain abnormal load permits if required.</li> <li>• Liaise with the appropriate road authorities to erect road signage on the N12 near the site access warning of possible construction vehicles.</li> </ul>								

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintain access to the N12.</li> <li>• Stagger deliveries to the site as far as possible.</li> <li>• Schedule deliveries outside of commuter peak hours, especially for large vehicles / abnormal loads.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Short-term	<b>Very Low</b>	Probable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

### 6.9.5 Opinion

The project will have an acceptable traffic impact. Provided that access improvements are undertaken to the appropriate standards, especially to accommodate heavy vehicle activities during the construction stage, the project can be approved from a traffic point of view.

### 6.9.6 The No-Go Alternative

The No Go alternative entails that the project is not developed. As such, additional traffic will not be generated, and access do not need to be improved. However, the project was deemed acceptable and the No-Go alternative is not preferred.

## 6.10 Potential Cumulative Impacts

### 6.10.1 Introduction

Anthropogenic activities can result in numerous and complex effects on the natural and social environment. While many of these are direct and immediate, the environmental effects of individual activities (or projects) can combine (additive impact) and interact (synergistic impact) with other activities in time and space to cause incremental or aggregate effects. Effects from ongoing but unrelated activities may accumulate or interact to cause additional effects (Canadian Environmental Protection Agency, no date), known as “cumulative” effects or impacts (hereafter cumulative impacts).

Cumulative impacts are defined by the International Finance Corporation (IFC, 2013) as “those that result from the successive, incremental, and / or combined effects of an action, project, or activity when added to other existing (i.e. ongoing), planned, and / or reasonably anticipated future” actions, projects or activities.

Key to the theoretical understanding of cumulative impacts is that the effects of previous and existing actions, projects or activities are already present and assimilated into the biophysical and socio-economic baseline. For the purposes of this report, cumulative impacts are defined as ‘direct and indirect project impacts that act together with external stressors and existing or future potential effects of other activities or proposed activities in the area/region that affect the same resources and/or receptors, also referred to as Valued Environmental and Social Components (VECs)’.

For the most part, cumulative effects or aspects thereof are too uncertain to be quantifiable, due to mainly lack of data availability and accuracy. This is particularly true of cumulative effects arising from potential or future projects, the design or details of which may not be finalised or available and the direct and indirect impacts of which have not yet been assessed.

### 6.10.2 Methodology

The IFC Good Practice Handbook for Cumulative Impact Assessment (2013), describes five / six key steps and considerations in the assessment of cumulative impacts:

- Definition of the Area of Influence (Aol);
- Identification of VECs, and their baseline condition;
- Identification of activities or stressors that contribute or are anticipated to contribute to cumulative effects in the foreseeable future (i.e. for all phases of the project);
- Implementation of a suitable methodology to assess cumulative impacts and evaluate their significance; and
- Identification of measures to manage and monitor cumulative impacts.

The **Aol** can be defined as the area likely to be affected, and the period or duration of occurrence of effects. In practice the Aol is a function of a large number of factors which have changing and varying degrees of influence on the areas surrounding the project throughout the course of the project cycle. The geographical extent of some of these factors can be partially quantified (e.g. air emissions can be defined by a delineated plume under specified meteorological conditions), whilst the extent of others is very difficult to measure (e.g. direct and indirect socio-economic effects).

In CIA it is good practice to focus on **VECs**, which are environmental and social attributes that are considered to be important in assessing risks and can be defined as essential elements of the physical, biological or socio-economic environment that may be affected by a proposed project. Types of VECs include physical features, habitats, wildlife populations (e.g. biodiversity), ecosystem services, natural processes (e.g. water and nutrient cycles, microclimate), social conditions (e.g. health, economics) or cultural aspects (e.g. traditional spiritual ceremonies). VECs should reflect public concern about social, cultural, economic, or aesthetic values, and also the scientific concerns of the professional community (Beanlands & Duinker, 1983).

In addition to the project, other past, present and future activities might have caused or may cause impacts and may interact with impacts caused by the project under review:

- **Cumulative impacts of past and existing activities:** It is reasonably straightforward to identify significant past and present projects and activities that may interact with the project to produce cumulative impacts, and in many respects, these are taken into account in the descriptions of the biophysical and socio-economic baseline; and
- **Potential cumulative impacts of planned and foreseen activities:** Relevant future projects that will be included in the assessment are defined as those that are 'reasonably foreseeable', i.e. those that have a high probability of implementation in the foreseeable future; speculation is not sufficient reason for inclusion.

Natural and social stressors can also contribute to cumulative impacts. Stressors can be defined as natural or anthropogenic aspects which cause a change in i.e. impact to the structure or function of the environment. Natural and anthropogenic stressors often have similar components, e.g. both drought and wood harvesting result in a loss of habitat. Due to rapid increases in human population, anthropogenic stressors on the environment have increased greatly (Cairns, 2013).

Given the limited detail available regarding future developments, the analysis is of a more generic nature and focuses on key issues and sensitivities for the project and how these might be influenced by cumulative impacts with other activities. Mitigation measures for cumulative impacts are not proposed as these cannot be imposed on other developers and projects. However, the mitigations measures proposed for the project in Sections 6.2 to 6.9 will also contribute towards the mitigation of cumulative impacts.

### 6.10.3 Cumulative Impact Assessment

Cumulative impacts have been assessed using the same impact rating methodology used to assess impacts associated with the project (see Section 6.1.4).

Typically, many mitigation measures to address cumulative impacts cannot be implemented by the project proponent as they relate to activities outside project boundaries over which the proponent has no jurisdiction, influence or right to impose mitigation. As such, mitigation measures to be implemented *on the project* to manage cumulative impacts are identified and considered in the *with mitigation* impact rating. Where possible, additional mitigation measures are identified that would be applicable to other activities or facilities in the area and could reduce the significance of the cumulative impact if the relevant authorities are able to enforce implementation.

### 6.10.3.1 Identification of the Aol, VECs, Stressors and Projects Considered

Cumulative impacts for this project have been identified based on the extent and nature of the Aol of the projects, status of VECs and understanding of external natural and social stressors. These insights have been informed by engagements with project stakeholders, review of existing documentation, field observations and data collection.

The Aol has been taken as the area within a 30 km radius of the project, covering ~2 830 km<sup>2</sup>, which is sufficiently large to capture cumulative impacts on ecosystem and sufficiently small to experience cumulative impacts. The VECs (considered) are those for which project impacts were identified, i.e. soil resources, freshwater and terrestrial ecology, fauna and social receptors (communities).

By and large, the cumulative impacts of past and existing projects are incorporated in the baseline (Section 4) and the focus hereafter is on planned and foreseen projects and activities. The future developments that are considered are:

- Those for which EAs have already been granted;
- Those that are currently subject to environmental authorisation applications and for which there is currently information available; and
- Those forming part of Provincial or National initiatives.

The project is part of the proposed, larger Stilfontein Solar PV Cluster which comprises up to nine up to 150 MW PV facilities and ancillary infrastructure located on neighbouring properties (see Section 3.1). The total area directly affected by the proposed Stilfontein Solar PV Cluster projects is ~30 km<sup>2</sup>. The project is also located within the Klerksdorp REDZ, which may attract additional renewable energy projects while grid capacity remains available. Several solar farms within a 30 km radius of the project area received EAs in the past (see Section 4.5), though none have established. The total area taken up by these authorised renewable energy projects is ~63 km<sup>2</sup>. The combined area affected by authorised renewable energy projects within the 30 km radius of the Stilfontein Solar PV Cluster is thus ~93 km<sup>2</sup>, with the Stilfontein Cluster projects accounting for ~32.5%.

The projects that are considered in the cumulative impact analysis are thus the remaining facilities in the Stilfontein Cluster and the approved solar projects listed in Table 4-7 and shown in Figure 4-27.

Natural or social stressors identified in the area of influence include:

- Veld fires, grazing and cultivation, affecting the function and composition of habitats and faunal communities;
- Powerlines and other infrastructure, posing a potential risk to avifauna; and
- Closure of local mines and dependent businesses, increasing unemployment.

### 6.10.3.2 Cumulative Soil and Land Capability Impacts

#### 6.10.3.2.1 Reduction and Loss of Land Capability

The cumulative impact of the proposed and approved renewable energy projects on land capability in the region is expected to be low as the regional soil sensitivity and land capability are also expected to be low, as identified for the project area.

The cumulative impact is assessed to be of **low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-35: Significance of potential cumulative reduction and loss of land capability**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Regional	Low	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Possible	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	2	1	3	<b>6</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coordinate the stormwater management plan with nearby developments / projects.</li> <li>• Coordinate vegetation clearing with adjacent projects to avoid concurrent clearing over large areas wherever possible.</li> <li>• Coordinate the Alien Vegetation Management Plan with nearby developments / projects..</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

### 6.10.3.3 Cumulative Freshwater Impacts

The project does not materially affect freshwater features at or near the project site, and does not affect, i.e. has no impact on any freshwater systems further afield. The logical inference is that the project is not expected to contribute to cumulative impacts on freshwater resources.

The cumulative freshwater impact is deemed **insignificant**.

### 6.10.3.4 Cumulative Terrestrial Ecology Impacts

#### 6.10.3.4.1 Cumulative Habitat Loss, Fragmentation and Degradation

The Stilfontein Cluster is located in the Vaal Reefs Dolomite Sinkhole Woodland and Carletonville Dolomite Grassland vegetation types. The total Stilfontein Cluster footprint is 2 470 ha, which equates to the loss of ~3.9% of each habitat type in the region (Table 6-36).

**Table 6-36 Cumulative loss of habitat due to Stilfontein Cluster**

<b>Vegetation Type</b>	<b>Pre-development (ha)</b>	<b>Post-development (ha)</b>	<b>Area lost (ha)</b>	<b>% lost</b>
Carletonville Dolomite Grassland	28 878	27 760	1 118	3.9%
Vaal Reefs Dolomite Sinkhole Woodland	34 740	33 397	1 343	3.9%
<b>Total</b>	<b>63 618</b>	<b>61 157</b>	<b>2 461</b>	<b>3.9%</b>

Adding the potential habitat loss of other approved, proximate PV facilities will increase the cumulative loss and degradation of natural areas in the region. Long-term cumulative impacts from a number of solar farms, powerlines and substations, together with existing land take for mining, urban areas and agriculture



(captured in the baseline), can eventually lead to the degradation and loss of habitat and vegetation types and loss of endemic and/or threatened species. The threshold where permanent loss at the species level occurs cannot be determined with the available information. However, the currently envisaged cumulative impact is deemed acceptable.

The cumulative impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-37: Significance of potential cumulative habitat loss, fragmentation and degradation**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintain an ecological corridor around the projects wherever possible to retain connectivity with and between areas of natural vegetation.</li> <li>• Retain as many protected trees as possible in the project area, where practically possible.</li> <li>• Coordinate flushing of fauna from site prior to construction with other nearby developments / projects to ensure fauna removes to undisturbed areas.</li> <li>• Share access roads with nearby developments / projects wherever possible to minimise the construction of new roads.</li> <li>• Consider sharing other infrastructure (waste management areas, laydown areas etc) with other nearby developments / projects where feasible to reduce their cumulative footprint.</li> <li>• Coordinate the Fire Management Plan with nearby developments / projects.</li> <li>• Coordinate the Alien Vegetation Management Plan with nearby developments / projects.</li> <li>• Coordinate rehabilitation with nearby developments / projects.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				

The significance of this cumulative impact could be reduced further if the relevant authorities impose the following mitigation measures on other renewable energy projects in the AoI:

- Implement ecological corridors between and around different projects wherever possible to retain connectivity with and between areas of natural vegetation.

### 6.10.3.5 Cumulative Avifauna Impacts

#### 6.10.3.5.1 Bird Displacement due to Habitat Transformation

The combined (~93 km<sup>2</sup>) footprint of the renewable energy projects approved or proposed in the region equates to ~3.2% of the total area within the 30 km radius, should all projects proceed. Natural habitat in this zone has been severely impacted by agriculture, urbanisation and industrial developments, with the result that very little pristine grassland habitat remains. This has already had a severe impact on avifauna, especially ground-living grassland species. Conversely, it could also be argued that certain development has benefited certain species, e.g. White-backed Vultures are most likely attracted to the area due to the presence of food (cattle carcasses) and suitable roosting structures (transmission lines and pylons).

The cumulative impact of the proposed Stilfontein PV Cluster projects and the other authorised PV projects on priority avifauna within the 30 km radius is considered to be of low intensity, given the relatively small area that will be affected and the current transformed state of the natural habitat within this area, which has already depleted the numbers and diversity of priority avifauna.

The cumulative impact is assessed to be of **low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-38: Significance of potential cumulative bird displacement due to habitat transformation**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	Medium
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintain an ecological corridor around the projects wherever possible to retain connectivity with and between areas of natural vegetation.</li> <li>• Retain as many trees as possible in the project area.</li> <li>• Coordinate flushing of fauna from site prior to construction with other nearby developments / projects to ensure fauna removes to undisturbed areas.</li> <li>• Coordinate management and Habitat Rehabilitation Plan with nearby developments / projects.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

#### 6.10.3.5.2 Bird Mortality due to Electrocution on Medium Voltage Power Lines

The total length of existing power lines (i.e. 11 kV and 22 kV lines) within the 30 km radius is unknown, but can safely be assumed to be hundreds of kilometres. Many of these lines could pose an electrocution risk to large raptors, particularly vultures, given the fact that many were constructed before bird-friendly designs became the norm. However, if the proposed 11-33 kV medium voltage lines of future energy projects are designed to be bird-friendly, their cumulative impact will be negligible.

The cumulative impact is assessed to be **insignificant**.

The significance of this cumulative impact could be reduced further if the relevant authorities implement the following mitigation measures on other powerlines in the Aol:

- Use bird friendly pole designs to provide safe perching space for birds; and
- Install Eskom-approved Bird Flight Diverters on overhead lines.

#### 6.10.3.6 Cumulative Socio-Economic Impacts

##### 6.10.3.6.1 Stimulation of Economic and Employment Growth

The nine Stilfontein Cluster PV plants together will have an installed capacity of up to 1 350 MW and are projected to generate ~3 000 GWh/annum<sup>30</sup>. This would represent 22% - 33% of the shortfall in installed capacity<sup>31</sup>. This is a significant contribution towards reducing the shortfall in South African electricity generation and the massive economic costs of loadshedding. The cumulative impact of renewable energy IPPs on the local, regional and national economy is thus highly significant and positive. Total CapEx for the nine Stilfontein Cluster PV projects would be R9.9 billion, and total OpEx over the 20-year project life would amount to ~5.4 billion (not discounted)<sup>32</sup>.

<sup>30</sup> Output is calculated as 1 350 MW x 2 200 MW= 2 970 GWh

<sup>31</sup> South Africa’s immediate power gap has been reported as 4 000 MW to 6 000 MW (Business Day, 2022)

<sup>32</sup> CapEx: R1.1 billion per project x 9 projects, OpEx: R600 million per project x 9 projects

Investment figures and installed capacity for other projects proposed in the area are not yet available. However, considering the high CapEx for a single PV project and other IPP’s likely interest to establish in the area, it is expected that multiple billions of Rand will be spent in the national, regional and local economies. For comparison, during the first four bidding rounds, REIPPPP attracted R209.4 billion in committed private sector investment (South African Government News Agency, 2019), 24% of which is Foreign Direct Investment (Nomjana, 2020).

A spike of investment and employment will be experienced during the construction phases of individual projects. If the construction phases for several projects in the same region coincide, the cumulative investment could have a distorting effect in the local and regional economy through significantly increased (short-term) demand for certain goods and services and labour. In the worst case this could lead to inflationary pressures on wages, goods and services and make them less affordable for other businesses or individuals. This could crowd out such businesses or reduce the living standard of people who do not benefit from the renewable energy boom and cannot afford goods at higher prices. However, the presence of several towns and past and present mining activity ensures a relatively large business network and workforce in the area, and the likelihood of this impact occurring is expected to be low.

Cumulative operational phase spending by the different projects will be lower and longer-term and thus carries less distortion risk. Operational phase spending of even a few projects will deliver for a sustained long-term increase in employment and local economic activity, and also provide some indirect and induced stimulation to other sectors.

The cumulative benefit is assessed to be of **very high** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-39: Significance of potential cumulative stimulation of economic and employment growth**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Regional	High	Long-term	<b>Very High</b>	Probable	<b>VERY HIGH</b>	+ ve	High
	2	3	3	<b>8</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coordinate local recruitment and procurement with other nearby developments / projects where possible to streamline the application process and/or transition of workers between projects.</li> <li>• Consider pooling resources to provide training to appointed staff and appointed service providers on how to position themselves for other employment opportunities once construction ends.</li> <li>• Consider undertake a joint skills survey in the area to inform a coordinated recruitment and procurement approach.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Regional	High	Long-term	<b>Very High</b>	Probable	<b>VERY HIGH</b>	+ ve	High
	2	3	3	<b>8</b>				

The significance of this cumulative impact could be reduced further if the relevant authorities implement the following mitigation measures in the Aol:

- Offer training in relevant skills to potential future workers and contractors prior to the initiation of projects.

**6.10.3.6.2 Increased Community Prosperity through Contributions and Income from IPPs**

Projects selected through the REIPPPP must comply with requirements aimed at sharing project benefits with HDI communities within a 50 km radius and contribute towards the growth and transformation of the South African economy.

Amounts committed to communities proposed by other projects is not yet available, but community investment is highly significant, especially in impoverished rural communities. For comparison, WWF (2015)

estimates that the 64 projects approved during the first three REIPPPP bidding rounds have committed to R441 million in SED, R130 million in ED and R600 million in dividends via community shareholding, amounting to community investment of R1.17 billion over the 20-year project lifetimes. The South African government assumes much higher values based on the first four bidding rounds, including R27.1 billion net community dividend income from their shareholding over the 20-year life of these projects (Nomjana, 2020).

The funds disbursed by REIPPPP to communities are very substantial, which may create governance challenges. Communication between IPPs operating in the same region and IPPs and communities, as well as the implementation of good governance procedures, will be critical to ensuring that the funds deliver equitable benefits, and to avoid corruption and community discord over use of funds.

As of mid-2021 IPPs can also sell independently generated electricity to private end-users; such agreements are not subject to the REIPPPP socio-economic requirements.

The cumulative benefit is assessed to be of **very high** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation if the project is procured via the REIPPPP (and past REIPPPP requirements apply).

**Table 6-40: Significance of potential cumulative increase in community prosperity if REIPPPP requirements apply**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Regional	High	Long-term	<b>Very High</b>	Probable	<b>VERY HIGH</b>	+ ve	High
	2	3	3	<b>8</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Coordinate selection and implementation of SED and ED initiatives with adjacent development / project proponents as far as possible maximise the effectiveness of initiatives.</li> <li>Consider pooling resources of several projects to fund dedicated full-time resources to jointly manage community work and relationships with stakeholders on behalf of several adjacent IPPs.</li> <li>Consider pooling resources of several projects to build skills of trustees and/or other community representatives as well as systems of governance.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Regional	High	Long-term	<b>Very High</b>	Probable	<b>VERY HIGH</b>	+ ve	High
	2	3	3	<b>8</b>				

The cumulative benefit is assessed to be of **low** significance and with the implementation of mitigation increases to **medium** if a private end-user agreement is pursued (or past REIPPPP requirements do not apply).

**Table 6-41: Significance of potential cumulative increase in community prosperity if REIPPPP requirements do not apply**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Probable	<b>LOW</b>	+ ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures to be implemented on the project to manage cumulative impacts:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Coordinate selection and implementation of SED and ED initiatives with adjacent development / project proponents as far as possible maximise the effectiveness of initiatives.</li> <li>Consider pooling resources of several projects to fund dedicated full-time resources to jointly manage community work and relationships with stakeholders on behalf of several adjacent IPPs.</li> <li>Consider pooling resources of several projects to build skills of community representatives as well as systems of governance.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	+ ve	High

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
	1	2	3	6				

The significance of this cumulative benefit could be increased further if the relevant authorities implement the following optimisation measures in the Aol:

- Encourage multilateral collaboration between different trusts and different IPPs, especially where there are multiple IPPs (and hence trusts) operating in the same geographic areas to improve integration and scaling of efforts and reduce duplication;
- Provide structured support to IPPs and any trusts they establish, including strategies and formats for community engagement, managing expectations, trustee elections and appointments and trust management; and
- Investigate options to improve local energy security in communities where the widespread expectation is that IPPs will solve longstanding energy woes, possibly through municipal IPP procurement, if possible.

### 6.10.3.7 Cumulative Heritage Impacts

#### 6.10.3.7.1 Loss of Heritage Resources and Fossils

Cumulatively the approved and proposed projects may have a negative impact on Stone Age sites in the area if such sites are destroyed. However, the impact can be successfully mitigated with the implementation of a standard chance finds procedure.

The cumulative impact is assessed to be of **very low** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-42: Significance of potential cumulative loss of heritage resources and fossils**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Improbable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Coordinate management plans and chance find procedures with nearby developments / projects where appropriate.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Low	Long-term	<b>Low</b>	Improbable	<b>VERY LOW</b>	– ve	High
	1	1	3	<b>5</b>				

### 6.10.3.8 Cumulative Visual Impacts

#### 6.10.3.8.1 Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion caused by Facilities

The Stilfontein Cluster will introduce unique infrastructure into the visual landscape, comprising over 2 000 ha of PV panels, four substations and various powerlines. This infrastructure will be different in form, scale, size and texture to the surrounding infrastructure and will contrast with the largely rural and natural landscape of the surrounding area. As such, the project will alter the sense of place and diminish the scenic value of the project site and surrounding area. The man-made structures that are visible to receptors will present as a visual intrusion in the foreground to motorists or middleground or background to residential and recreational receptors. As the cluster will require some lighting, it is expected to add to existing nightglow from surrounding residential areas.

The other approved PV projects are largely located to the south-west of the project area, adjacent to existing mines. As such, these projects are likely to be more congruent with land use, form and size than the Stilfontein Cluster which is at some distance from mines in the area. Despite the comparatively small scale of those projects, they will also create visual impacts such as altered sense of place, visual intrusion and light pollution.

The cumulative impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-43: Significance of potential cumulative altered sense of place and visual intrusion caused by facilities**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures to be implemented on the project to manage cumulative impacts:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Coordinate vegetation clearing with adjacent projects to avoid concurrent clearing over large areas wherever possible.</li> <li>Coordinate any screening of construction activities with nearby developments / projects where appropriate to improve the overall visual screening effect.</li> <li>Coordinate the planting of screening vegetation with nearby developments / projects where appropriate to improve the overall visual screening effect.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	– ve	High
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				

**Table 6-44: Cumulative Traffic Impacts**

6.10.3.8.2 Additional Trip Generation

The construction of solar projects generates additional traffic, including heavy and abnormal load vehicles.

If the construction phases for several projects in the same region coincide, the cumulative traffic generation could be significant. This is especially true if several Stilfontein Cluster projects are constructed concurrently and accessed via the same access point off the N12. While the traffic impacts of one project are very low, the impact increases significantly if the number of vehicles using the same access point increases (up to ninefold). In that case an analysis should be undertaken to confirm the capacity and design of project site access point(s) during the construction phases.

The operational phase traffic impact is considered negligible even if all facilities operate concurrently.

The cumulative impact is assessed to be of **medium** significance with and without the implementation of mitigation.

**Table 6-45: Significance of potential cumulative trip generation**

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<b>Without mitigation</b>	Local	High	Medium-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	– ve	High
	1	3	2	<b>6</b>				
<b>Recommended mitigation measures:</b>								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Coordinate the construction of access to the project site with nearby developments / projects where appropriate to ensure the access capacity is sufficient for cumulative project traffic volume.</li> <li>Coordinate the implementation of a road maintenance plan with nearby developments / projects.</li> </ul>								

	<i>Extent</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Duration</i>	<i>Consequence</i>	<i>Probability</i>	<i>Significance</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Confidence</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Coordinate traffic to the larger project site with nearby developments / projects, including delivery times (especially for heavy vehicles and abnormal loads) and shift changes, to ensure efficient access to the site especially during traffic peak hours.</li> </ul>								
<b>With mitigation</b>	Local	Medium	Long-term	<b>Medium</b>	Probable	<b>MEDIUM</b>	- ve	High
	1	2	3	<b>6</b>				

## 7 Conclusions and Recommendations

This chapter evaluates the impact of the MTS. The principal findings are presented in this chapter, followed by an analysis of the need and desirability of the project and a discussion of the key factors DFFE would consider in order to take a decision which is aligned with the principles of sustainable development and South Africa's commitments to reducing carbon emissions effected in part through a just transition to renewable energy. Key recommendations are also presented.

The project has the potential to cause impacts, both negative and positive. The BA has examined the available project information and drawn on both available (secondary) and specifically collected (primary) baseline data to identify and evaluate environmental (biophysical and socio-economic) impacts of the proposed project. The BAR aims to inform stakeholders and decision-makers of the key considerations by providing an objective and comprehensive analysis of the potential impacts and benefits of the project, and has created a platform for the formulation of mitigation measures to manage these impacts, presented in the EMPr (see Appendix E<sup>33</sup>).

This chapter presents the general conclusions drawn from the BA process, which should be considered in evaluating the project. It should be viewed as a supplement to the detailed assessment of individual impacts presented in Chapter 6 and the specialist studies in Appendix D.

### 7.1 Environmental Impact Statement

The EIA Regulations, 2014 prescribe the required content of a BAR, including, inter alia, an EIS, which is presented below.

#### 7.1.1 Evaluation and Summary of Positive and Negative Impacts

The evaluation is undertaken in the context of:

- The project information provided by the proponent;
- The assumptions made for this BAR;
- The assumption that the recommended (essential) mitigation measures will be effectively implemented; and
- The assessments provided by specialists.

This evaluation aims to provide answers to a series of key questions posed as objectives at the outset of this report, which are repeated here:

- Assess in detail the environmental and socio-economic impacts that may result from the project;
- Identify environmental and social mitigation measures to address the impacts assessed; and
- Produce BAR that will assist DFFE to decide whether (and under what conditions) to authorise the proposed development.

---

<sup>33</sup> As noted in Section 2.1.1.4, transmission line projects triggering LN1 Activity 11 where the greater part of the facility is located within a REDZ must use the:

- Generic EMPr for the Development and Expansion of Substation Infrastructure for Transmission and Distribution of Electricity; and / or
- Generic EMPr for the Development and Expansion of Overhead Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure,

published in GN 435 of 2019. As such, these EMPrs are provided in Appendix E as appropriate, together with any project-specific measures.



The evaluation and the basis for the subsequent discussion are represented concisely in Table 7-1, which summarises the potentially significant impacts and their significance ratings before and after application of mitigation and/or optimisation measures.

**Table 7-1: Summary of potential impacts of the MTS**

*Potential negative impacts are shaded in reds, benefits are shaded in greens.  
 Only key mitigation / optimisation measures are presented.*

Impact	Significance rating		Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/ optimisation	After mitigation/ optimisation	
<b>CONSTRUCTION PHASE IMPACTS</b>			
<b>Soil and Land Capability Impacts</b>			
Reduction and loss of land capability	Very low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement a Stormwater Management Plan.</li> <li>• Drive only on approved access roads to avoid unnecessary compaction.</li> <li>• Clear vegetation only once construction is imminent, to reduce cleared areas and minimise erosion risk.</li> <li>• Store and maintain topsoil as per best practice in order to utilise it for rehabilitation of eroded areas.</li> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>• Park equipment and vehicles on impermeable surfaces or utilise drip trays to prevent hydrocarbon spills and monitor daily for fluid leaks.</li> <li>• Remediate hydrocarbon spills immediately.</li> <li>• Report hydrocarbon spills to the appropriate authorities if significant contamination of the environment occurs.</li> </ul>
<b>Freshwater Impacts</b>			
Degradation and loss of wetlands	Very low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearly demarcate the construction footprint and restrict all construction activities to within the proposed infrastructure area.</li> <li>• Avoid wetland and buffer areas during the construction phase.</li> <li>• Implement and strictly adhere to dust-reducing mitigation measures, including wetting of exposed soft soil surfaces and not conducting activities on windy days which will increase the likelihood of dust being generated.</li> <li>• Revegetate any areas that are cleared during construction with indigenous vegetation to prevent erosion and reduce the likelihood of encroachment by alien invasive plant species upon completion of the MTS construction.</li> <li>• Appropriately remove and store any topsoil that is stripped during construction for use during re-vegetation and decommissioning.</li> <li>• Ensure pylons / towers are installed outside of delineated watercourses and features, although cables may be suspended above watercourses or features between these systems. Pylons / towers may be placed within the buffer</li> </ul>

Impact	Significance rating		Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/ optimisation	After mitigation/ optimisation	
			area only where engineering or safety concerns require this, but these must be kept to a minimum. Where this is required, service roads are permissible up to the pylon positions for access.
<b>Terrestrial Ecology Impacts</b>			
Degradation and loss of habitat and protected species	Low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Demarcate the construction footprint with physical barriers (i.e safety tape / fencing, signage).</li> <li>• Restrict vegetation clearance to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>• Clear vegetation by hand cutting to avoid heavy machinery, as far as practically possible.</li> <li>• Utilise existing access routes and paths, where possible.</li> <li>• Limit construction of new roads as much as possible.</li> <li>• Avoid disturbance to rocky habitats.</li> <li>• Minimise the number (and size) of laydown, storage and staff facilities.</li> <li>• Remove all remaining construction materials once the construction phase ends.</li> <li>• Store topsoil stockpiles on flat ground and use bunds and/or other stabilisation methods (e.g., netting) to avoid erosion.</li> <li>• Obtain relocation or destruction permits before any protected trees (<i>Vachellia erioloba</i>) are relocated or destroyed.</li> <li>• Compile and implement a Hydrocarbon Spill Management Plan;</li> <li>• Compile and implement a Fire Management Plan.</li> <li>• Appoint a rehabilitation specialist to develop and implement a Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>• Rehabilitate areas as soon as they are no longer impacted by construction.</li> <li>• Utilise indigenous vegetation only for habitat rehabilitation.</li> <li>• Return topsoil as soon as possible.</li> <li>• Apply surplus topsoil / rehabilitation material to other areas in need of stabilisation and vegetation cover.</li> <li>• Implement strict dust control for all roads and bare (unvegetated) areas.</li> <li>• Reduce dust generated by vehicles and earth moving machinery, through wetting the soil surface (with non-potable water) and erecting speed limit signage to enforce speed limits.</li> <li>• Prohibit the use of non-environmentally friendly dust suppressants to avoid pollution of water sources.</li> </ul>
Spread of alien and invasive species	Low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement an Alien Vegetation Management Plan, including but not limited to identification of areas for action (if any), prescription of the necessary removal methods and frequencies, monitoring plan and requirements for updates.</li> <li>• Compile and implement a Waste Management Plan, including but not limited to:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Prioritize waste management such that all waste is collected, stored and disposed of adequately.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Impact	Significance rating		Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/optimisation	After mitigation/optimisation	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Collect and dispose of all waste generated on site, preferably weekly but at least monthly, to prevent rodents and pests.</li> <li>○ Ensure waste storage bins have lids and are secured to prevent falling over.</li> <li>● Compile and implement a pest control plan which precludes use of poison as a control measure.</li> </ul>
Displacement and loss of fauna	Very low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Demarcate the construction footprint with physical barriers (i.e. safety tape / fencing / signage).</li> <li>● Restrict vegetation clearance to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>● Minimise vegetation clearing to the minimum required. Areas should be cleared and disturbed only as and when needed.</li> <li>● Provide environmental awareness training to all personnel and contractors to include the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Sensitive environmental receptors within the project area;</li> <li>○ Management requirements in the Environmental Authorisation and the EMPr;</li> <li>○ How to deal with any fauna species encountered during the construction process;</li> </ul> </li> <li>● Minimise the timing between clearing of an area and subsequent development to avoid fauna from re-entering the site to be disturbed.</li> <li>● Excavate holes / excavations on a needs only basis.</li> <li>● Cover open holes / excavations overnight to prevent fauna mortalities.</li> <li>● Restrict construction activities to one area at a time as far as possible, and be systematic, allowing fauna to move off site as activities progress.</li> <li>● Create a disturbance (one or two persons walk the area) prior to vegetation clearing activities in order for fauna to move off site (not more than 1 day in advance of clearing).</li> <li>● Obtain permits for the relocation of animals as and if required.</li> </ul>
<b>Avifauna Impacts</b>			
Bird displacement due to disturbance	Low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Restrict construction activities to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>● Implement best practice measures to control noise and dust.</li> <li>● Utilise existing access roads and keep the construction of new roads to a minimum.</li> <li>● Demarcate access roads clearly.</li> <li>● Prohibit off-road driving.</li> <li>● Undertake regular ECO audits / inspections to report on compliance with the EMPr (including compliance with noise control mechanisms).</li> <li>● Include avifauna impacts of off-road driving in the construction staff environmental awareness training.</li> </ul>

Impact	Significance rating		Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/ optimisation	After mitigation/ optimisation	
Bird displacement due to habitat transformation	Medium	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Retain or relocate existing waterpoints to ensure at least four waterpoints are retained within the cluster area</li> <li>Restrict construction activities to the immediate development footprint.</li> <li>Implement best practice measures to control noise and dust.</li> <li>Demarcate access roads clearly.</li> <li>Prohibit off-road driving.</li> <li>Minimise construction of new roads as far as possible.</li> <li>Implement (strictly) the mitigation measures made in the terrestrial ecology specialist assessment.</li> <li>Appoint a rehabilitation specialist to develop and implement a Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>Conduct site inspections to monitor the progress of rehabilitation in accordance with the Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>Implement adaptive management to ensure vegetation rehabilitation goals are met.</li> </ul>
<b>Socio-Economic Impacts</b>			
Social disruption and change in social dynamics	Very Low	Insignificant	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clearly publicise and implement a local recruitment policy.</li> <li>Work together with impartial local representatives to identify local people during the recruitment process.</li> <li>Consult with the municipality regarding the capacity of existing services and infrastructure (e.g. provision of water, electricity, waste removal, sanitation and housing) to cope if significant numbers of additional workers are brought into the area during the construction period.</li> <li>Consider supporting projects that improve local services and infrastructure and/or deal with social problems or conflicts through the social upliftment programme, if the need arises.</li> </ul>
<b>Heritage and Palaeontology Impacts</b>			
Loss of heritage resources	Very low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employ an ECO to monitor the construction activities.</li> <li>Implement a chance find procedure for palaeontology and heritage finds.</li> </ul>
<b>Visual Impacts</b>			
Altered Sense of Place and Visual Intrusion	Low	Very low	n/a <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Limit vegetation clearance and the footprint of construction to what is absolutely essential.</li> <li>Consolidate the footprint of the construction camp to a functional minimum.</li> <li>Avoid excavation, handling and transport of materials which may generate dust under very windy conditions.</li> <li>Cover stockpiled aggregates and sand to minimise dust generation.</li> </ul>

Impact	Significance rating		Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/optimisation	After mitigation/optimisation	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement dust suppression on access roads during dry conditions.</li> <li>• Keep construction site tidy.</li> </ul>
<b>Traffic Impacts</b>			
Trip generation	Low	Very low	n/a <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Design and construct an appropriate and formalised access to the site from the N12, if and when the project is awarded preferential bidder status.</li> <li>• Liaise with the appropriate road authorities to coordinate access improvements and erect road signage on the N12 near the site access warning of possible construction vehicles.</li> <li>• Inform local road authorities and road users before unusual traffic is generated, e.g. high volumes or abnormal loads.</li> <li>• Obtain abnormal load permits if required.</li> <li>• Compile a road maintenance plan.</li> <li>• Stagger deliveries to the site as far as possible.</li> <li>• Schedule deliveries outside of commuter peak hours, especially for large vehicles / abnormal loads.</li> <li>• Consider scheduling shift changes to occur outside peak hours.</li> </ul>
<b>OPERATION PHASE IMPACTS</b>			
Reduction and loss of land capability	Very low	Very low	n/a <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement a Stormwater Management Plan.</li> <li>• Drive only on approved access roads to avoid unnecessary compaction.</li> <li>• Park equipment and vehicles on impermeable surfaces or utilise drip trays to prevent hydrocarbon spills and monitor daily for fluid leaks.</li> <li>• Remediate hydrocarbon spills immediately.</li> <li>• Report hydrocarbon spills to the appropriate authorities if significant contamination of the environment occurs.</li> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>• Implement the Habitat Restoration Plan guided by the botanical specialist.</li> </ul>
<b>Freshwater Impacts</b>			
Degradation and loss of wetlands	Low	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compile and implement an effective Stormwater Management Plan.</li> <li>• Stormwater leaving the site should not be concentrated in a single exit drain but spread across multiple drains around the site each fitted with energy dissipaters (e.g. slabs of concrete with rocks cemented in).</li> </ul>

Impact	Significance rating		Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/optimisation	After mitigation/optimisation	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Release only clean water into the environment.</li> <li>• Promote water infiltration into the ground around the MTS, adhering to the Eskom safety standards where applicable.</li> <li>• Re-vegetate denuded areas as soon as possible.</li> </ul>
<b>Terrestrial Ecology Impacts</b>			
Degradation and fragmentation of habitat	Very low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan. Prohibit staff from bringing or removing any plant species (whether indigenous or exotic) to or from the project site to prevent the spread of exotic or invasive species or the illegal collection of plants.</li> </ul>
Spread of alien and invasive species	Very low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>• Implement the Waste Management Plan.</li> </ul>
Displacement and loss of fauna	Low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Design outside lighting to limit impacts on fauna:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Fit lighting fixtures with baffles, hoods or louvres and directed light downward.</li> <li>○ Direct outside lighting away from high sensitive areas such as the wetland.</li> <li>○ Avoid fluorescent and mercury vapor lighting.</li> <li>○ Utilize sodium vapor (yellow) lights wherever possible.</li> <li>○ Utilize motion detection lighting wherever possible to minimise the unnecessary illumination of areas.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Minimise traffic and the use of vehicle lights during the night.</li> <li>• Minimise noise from dusk to dawn to minimize disturbances to amphibian species and nocturnal mammals.</li> <li>• Obtain permits for the relocation of animals as and if required.</li> </ul>
<b>Avifauna Impacts</b>			
Bird displacement due to disturbance	Low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limit the area of activity to the immediate footprint of the infrastructure as possible.</li> <li>• Demarcate access roads clearly.</li> <li>• Prohibit off-road driving.</li> <li>• Restrict access to areas outside of the site boundary.</li> <li>• Implement best practice measures to control noise and dust.</li> <li>• Undertake regular ECO audits / inspections to report on compliance with the EMPr.</li> </ul>

Impact	Significance rating		Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/optimisation	After mitigation/optimisation	
Bird mortality due to collision with transmission lines	Medium	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Install Eskom-approved Bird Flight Diverters on the entire 132kV grid connection and on the earthwire, according to the relevant Eskom guideline.</li> <li>These devices must be installed as soon as the conductors are strung.</li> </ul>
Bird mortality due to electrocution in substation	Low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Investigate electrocution incidents and implement appropriate mitigation by insulating any hardware that causes repeat electrocutions.</li> </ul>
<b>Visual Impacts</b>			
Altered sense of place and visual intrusion caused by the Main Transmission substation	Medium	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Minimise the substation footprint, if possible.</li> <li>Ensure that any built structures within the on-site substation footprint blend into the landscape.</li> <li>Retain or re-establish natural vegetation around the on-site substation as far as practically possible.</li> </ul>
<b>DECOMMISSIONING PHASE IMPACTS</b>			
<b>Terrestrial Ecology Impacts</b>			
Degradation and fragmentation of habitat	Very low	Very low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Limit closure and rehabilitation activities to the disturbed footprint areas only.</li> <li>Declare all areas outside of the disturbed footprint as 'no-go' areas.</li> <li>Avoid access to previously undisturbed or already rehabilitated areas.</li> <li>Utilise indigenous vegetation for habitat rehabilitation.</li> <li>Reduce dust generated by vehicles and earth moving machinery through wetting the soil surface (with non-potable water) and erecting speed limit signage to enforce speed limits.</li> <li>Implement the Habitat Rehabilitation Plan.</li> <li>Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> </ul>
Spread of alien and invasive species	Low	Insignificant	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implement the Alien Vegetation Management Plan.</li> <li>Update the Alien Vegetation Management Plan to include estimated monitoring frequency post-closure and when the plan is no longer required to be implemented, to be compliant with legislated requirements at the time.</li> </ul>
<b>Avifauna Impacts</b>			



Impact	Significance rating			Key mitigation / optimisation measures
	Before mitigation/ optimisation	After mitigation/ optimisation		
Bird displacement due to disturbance	Low	Very low	n/a	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limit the area of activity to the immediate footprint of the infrastructure as possible.</li> <li>• Demarcate access roads clearly.</li> <li>• Prohibit off-road driving.</li> <li>• Restrict access to areas outside of the site boundary.</li> <li>• Implement best practice measures to control noise and dust.</li> <li>• Undertake regular ECO audits / inspections to report on compliance with the EMPr.</li> </ul>
<b>Traffic Impacts</b>				
Trip generation	Very low	Very low	n/a	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inform local road authorities and road users before unusual traffic is generated, e.g. high volumes or abnormal loads.</li> <li>• Obtain abnormal load permits if required.</li> <li>• Liaise with the appropriate road authorities to erect road signage on the N12 near the site access warning of possible construction vehicles.</li> <li>• Maintain access to the N12.</li> <li>• Stagger deliveries to the site as far as possible.</li> <li>• Schedule deliveries outside of commuter peak hours, especially for large vehicles / abnormal loads.</li> </ul>

Relevant observations with regard to the overall impact ratings, assuming mitigation measures are effectively implemented, are:

- The predicted *land capability* impacts are rated as *very low*, as soil resources are not sensitive and existing land capability is low. It is expected that grazing can continue in much of the area after decommissioning of the project.
- The predicted *freshwater* impacts are rated as *very low*. Indirect impacts are mainly associated with possible further degradation of the already impacted HGM1 wetland due to construction of the MTS near the wetland, outside the prescribed wetland buffer.
- The predicted *terrestrial ecology* impacts are rated as *very low*. Impacts are mainly associated with the degradation, loss and fragmentation of habitat due to installation of infrastructure and facilities and, to a lesser degree, displacement of fauna due to disturbance. The project site overlays an ESA, but is degraded by grazing and other historic anthropogenic activities.
- The predicted impacts on *avifauna* are rated as *low* during construction and *very low* during operation. Construction phase impacts are mainly associated with habitat loss and disturbance, while collisions with transmission lines and electrocution at substation equipment present the greatest risks during operations. However, these can be effectively mitigated through standard Eskom approved design measures.
- The project is not expected to have significant *socio-economic impacts* other than those separately assessed for the PV facilities.
- The predicted *heritage* impacts are rated as *very low*. Impacts are mainly associated with the damage to and loss of heritage resources and fossils, while effective documentation and/or recovery of resources would present a benefit. No significant resources were identified.
- The predicted *visual* impacts are rated as *very low* during construction. However, during the operational phase, some impacts resulting from altered sense of place, visual intrusion and light pollution at night are considered to be of *medium* significance.
- The predicted *traffic* impacts are rated as *very low* during construction and decommissioning. Impacts are mainly associated with the generation of additional (heavy and abnormal load) vehicle trips potentially causing congestion at the site access from the N12.
- *Cumulative impacts* in the region may derive from past and ongoing agricultural and mining activities (captured in the baseline) and the proposed development of the entire Stilfontein Cluster as well as additional renewable energy projects in the Klerksdorp REDZ – five projects have been approved or are under investigation. Potential cumulative impacts of *very low* or *low* significance are associated with displacement of avifauna due to habitat transformation, reduction of soil capability and loss of heritage resources. Potential cumulative impacts of *medium* significance are associated with terrestrial ecology (degradation, fragmentation and loss of habitat) and visual impacts (alteration of sense of place, visual intrusion) and traffic (trip generation and congestion). Cumulative socio-economic benefits are of *very high* significance if income from project ownership is equitably disbursed and appropriately managed. The contribution of the project to cumulative impacts is relatively limited at a regional scale.

### 7.1.2 Integrated Project and Sensitivity Map

The EIA Regulations, 2014 prescribe that an integrated map at an appropriate scale is presented in the EIS. The map should, so far as it is applicable, superimpose the proposed activity and associated structures and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers. The integrated sensitivity map for the MTS and associated grid infrastructure

is provided in

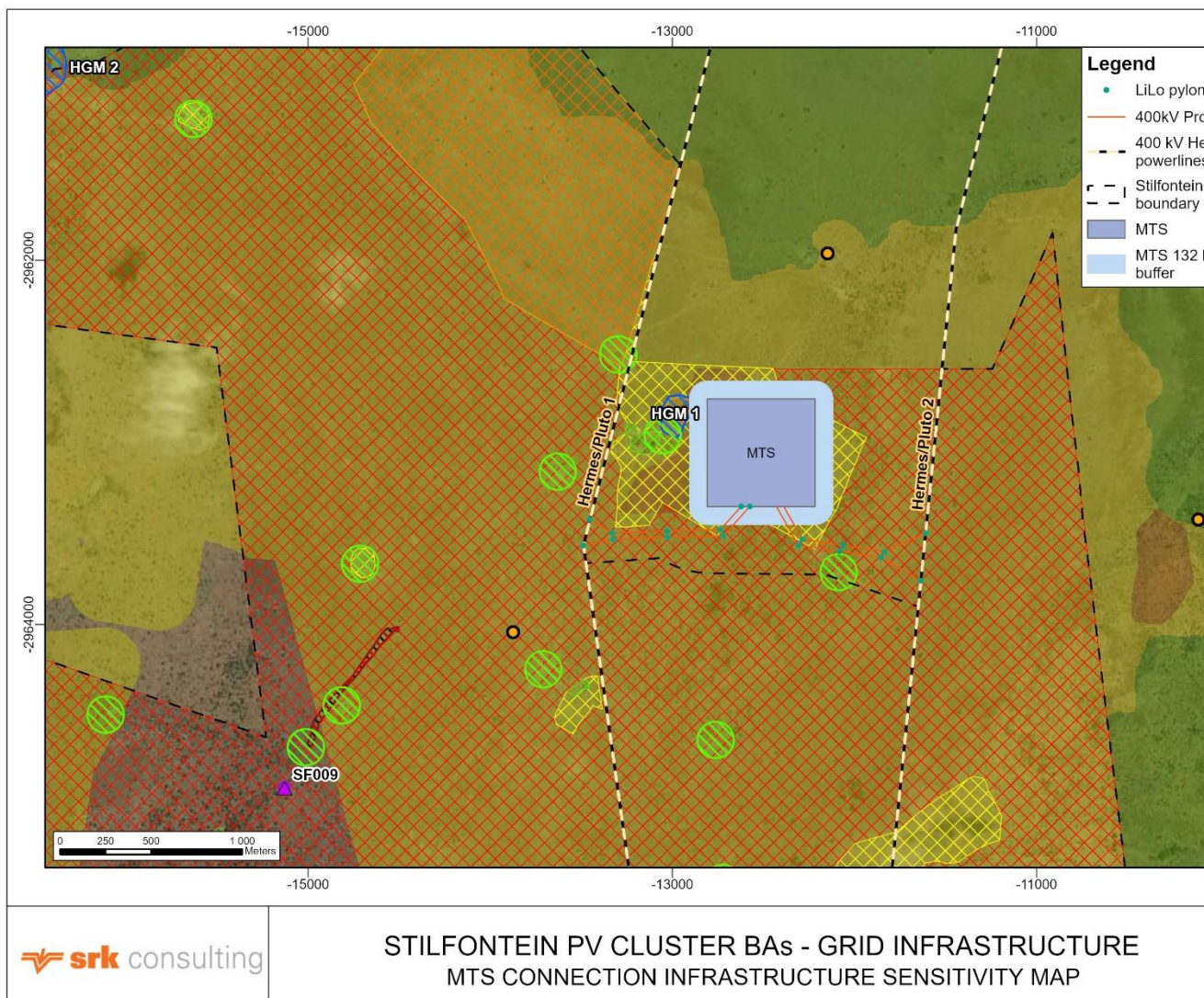


Figure 7-1 and for the overall Stilfontein Cluster area in Figure 7-2.

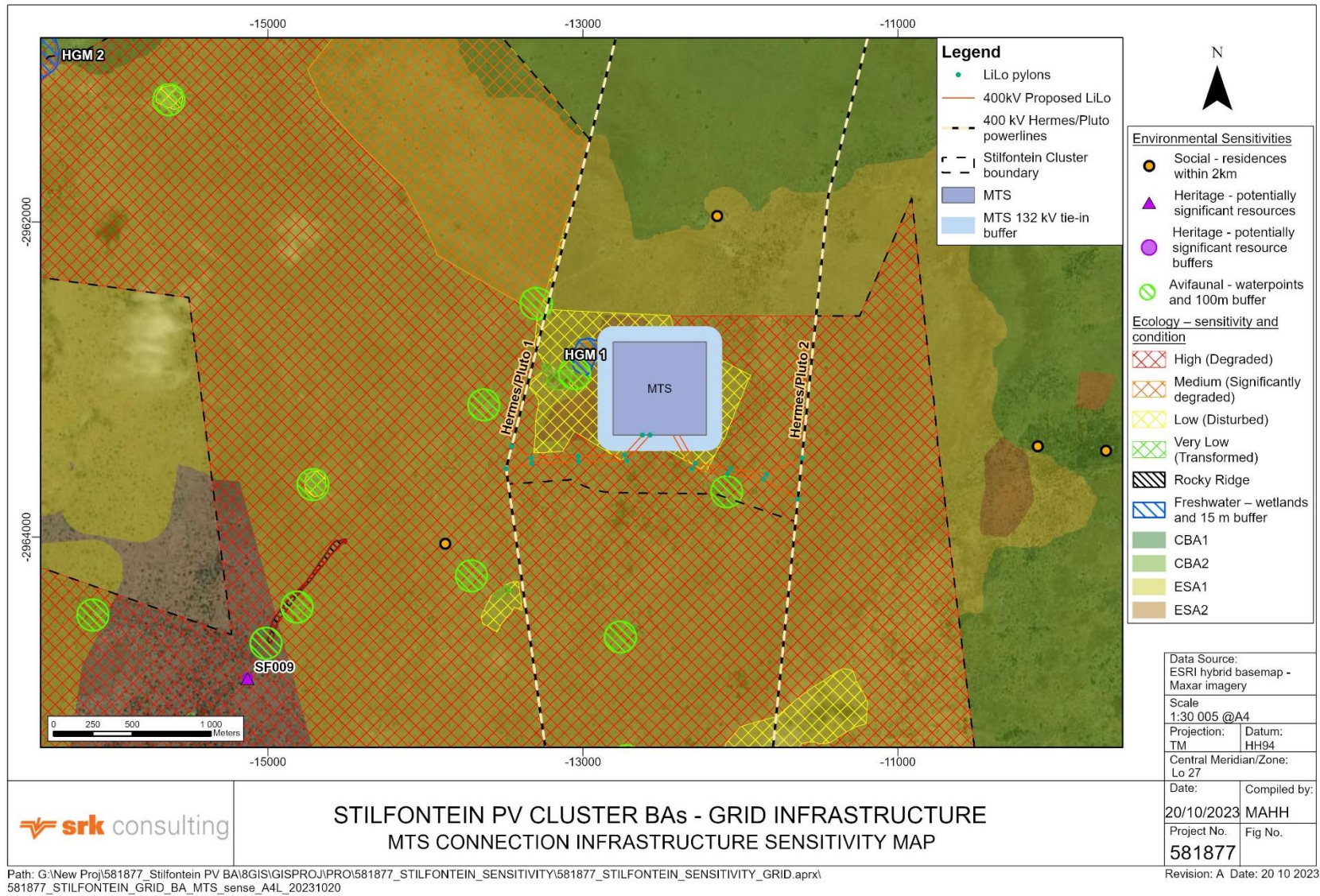


Figure 7-1: Integrated sensitivity map

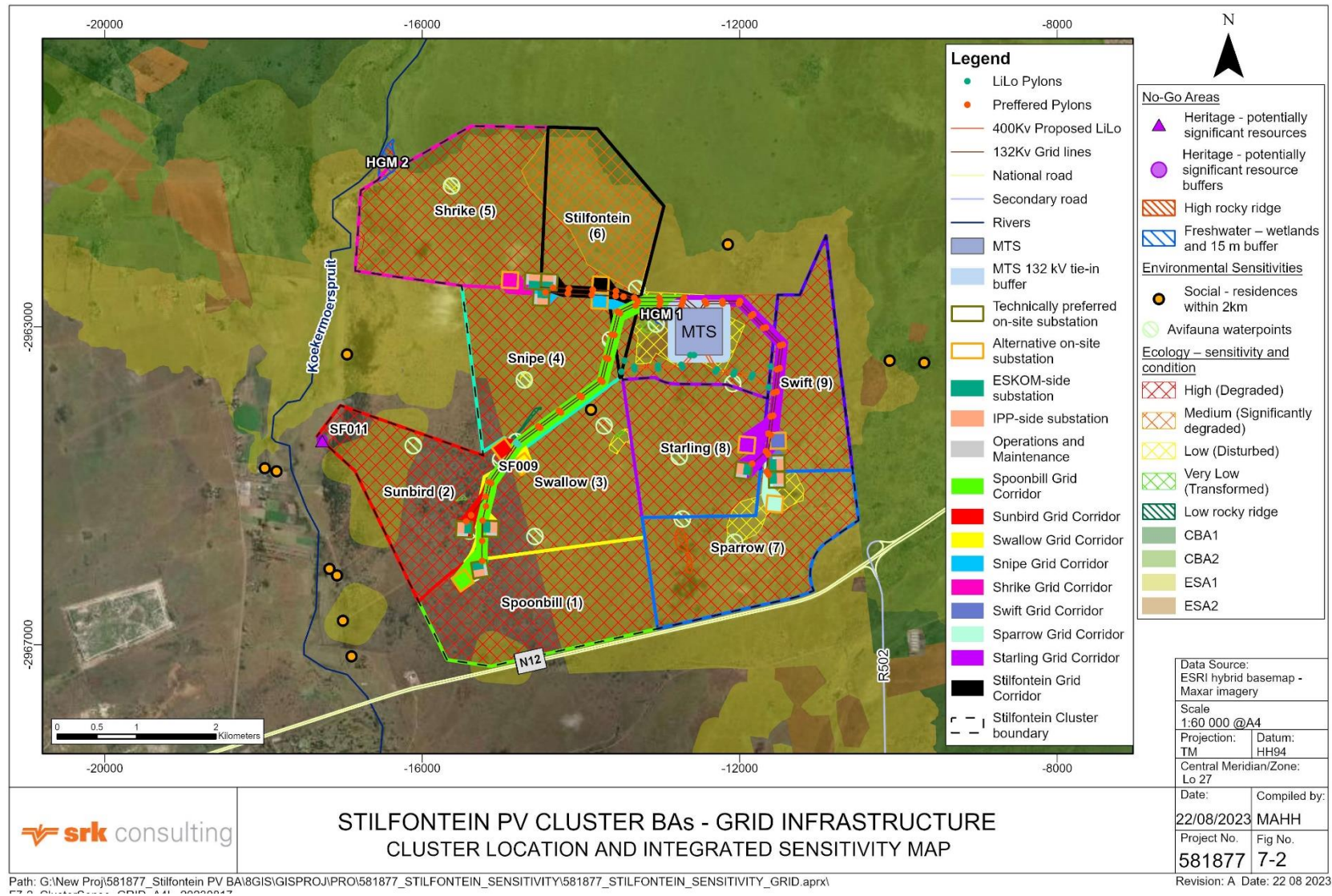


Figure 7-2: Integrated sensitivity map: Stilfontein Cluster area

### 7.1.3 Principal Findings

The project will entail so-called triple bottom line costs and/or benefits. The triple bottom line reflects the three pillars of sustainability and concerns itself with environmental (taken to mean biophysical) sustainability, social equity and economic efficiency and is typically employed by companies seeking to report on their performance. The concept serves as a useful construct to frame the evaluation of the effects of the project.

The challenge for DFFE is to take a decision which is sustainable in the long term and which will probably entail trade-offs between environmental, social and economic costs and benefits. The trade-offs are documented in the report, which assesses environmental impacts and benefits and compares these to the No-Go alternative. SRK believes it will be instructive to reduce the decision factors to the key points which the authorities should consider. These points constitute the principal findings of the BA:

1. Mainstream intends to construct infrastructure on ~36 ha of private land to evacuate renewable energy generated at a new PV plant to the national grid. The project includes the 132/400 kV MTS and 400 kV transmission lines to the existing on-site Hermes / Pluto 1 and 2 transmission lines, as well as associated infrastructure (such as access roads etc.).
2. The purpose of the project is to improve the capacity and reliability of electrical supply to South Africa.
3. The project forms part of the proposed ~2 114 ha Stilfontein Cluster that comprises up to nine up to 150 MW PV facilities and up to nine BESS, nine on-site substations and one MTS as well as associated infrastructure (such as access roads etc.). The proposed project is intended to form part of a submission under the REIPPPP. If bidding is unsuccessful and a private offtake opportunity arises, this may be pursued.
4. South Africa experiences regular loadshedding due to insufficient power generation, mostly from thermal power plants with high GHG emissions. The project will significantly increase power generation capacity (reducing loadshedding, boosting economic productivity and improving quality of life) and is aligned with South Africa's commitments to reducing carbon emissions and climate change impacts, effected in part through a just transition to renewable energy.
5. The project is located on private land in a rural area used primarily for grazing.
6. Economic activity in the region has reduced with the closure of many local mines.
7. Potential environmental aspects considered include freshwater, terrestrial ecology and avifauna, land capability, socio-economic, heritage, visual and traffic impacts.
8. Key ecological impacts are associated with a loss in vegetation and avifauna mortality. These impacts are mitigated to acceptable levels through the strict implementation of the EMPr.
9. The socio-economic benefits of economic growth, employment, CSI and partial community ownership in the PV project (if implemented) are important considerations.
10. The No-Go alternative implies that the project will not be implemented, significant benefits will not accrue and increased electrical supply will not be secured (from this project), while (acceptable) adverse impacts will also not materialise. As potential project impacts were deemed acceptable and outweighed by potential benefits, the No-Go alternative is not preferred.
11. A number of mitigation and monitoring measures have been identified to avoid, minimise and manage potential environmental impacts associated with the project. These are further laid out in the EMPr<sup>34</sup>.

---

<sup>34</sup> The Generic EMPs for substations and overhead transmission infrastructure were used as appropriate.

## 7.2 Analysis of Need and Desirability of the Project

Best practice as well as the EIA Regulations, 2014 (Appendix 3 Section 3 [f]) requires that the need and desirability of a project (including viable alternatives) are considered and evaluated against the tenets of sustainability. This requires an analysis of the effect of the project on *social, economic and ecological* systems; and places emphasis on consideration of a project's *justification* not only in terms of financial viability (which is often implicit in a [private] proponent's intention to implement the project), but also in terms of the specific needs and interests of the community and the opportunity cost of development (DEA&DP, 2013).

The principles in NEMA (see Section 2.1.1) serve as a guide for the interpretation of the issue of "need", but do not conceive "need" as synonymous with the "general purpose and requirements" of the project. The latter might relate to the applicant's project motivation, while the "need" relates to the interests and needs of the broader public. In this regard, an important NEMA principle is that environmental management must ensure that the environment is "held in public trust for the people, the beneficial use of environmental resources must serve the public interest and the environment must be protected as the people's common heritage" (DEA, 2014).

There are various proxies for assessing the need and desirability of a project, notably national and regional planning documents which enunciate the strategic needs and desires of broader society and communities: project alignment with these documents must therefore be considered and reported on in the EIA process. With the use of these documents or - where these planning documents are not available - using best judgment, the EAPs (and specialists) must consider the project's strategic context, or justification, in terms of the needs and interests of the broader community (DEA&DP, 2013).

The consideration of need and desirability in EIA decision-making therefore requires the consideration of the strategic context of the project along with broader societal needs and the public interest (DEA, 2017). However, it is important to note that projects which deviate from strategic plans are not necessarily undesirable. The DEA notes that more important are the social, economic and ecological impacts of the deviation, and "the burden of proof falls on the applicant (and the EAP) to show why the impacts...might be justifiable" (DEA, 2010).

### 7.2.1 Alignment with Policy and Planning Documentation

The project generally aligns well with key planning documents (see Table 7-2), as it is aligned with and directly responds to South African strategy on growing renewable energy (as expressed in the IRP and SIPs) and is located in a REDZ declared for the express purpose of solar energy generation. Provincial policy also supports expansion of renewable energy.

The proposed project is intended to form part of a submission under the REIPPPP, a programme aimed at bringing additional megawatts onto the country's electricity system in line with the IRP through private sector investment in renewable energy development. The project is desirable as it contributes to the overarching goals of the IRP which is to add megawatts to the grid to reduce loadshedding. There is a significant need and urgency for installation of additional renewable energy in South Africa, making the project highly desirable.

The project lies in an ESA, one of the less sensitive biodiversity planning categories, but which nevertheless should be retained in at least a semi-natural state. In principle, the NWBSP 'actively discourages' renewable energy (PV farms and solar arrays) and does 'not usually permit' transmission lines in ESAs; however, based on a site investigation the ecological specialist has indicated that impacts can be mitigated so that the project is acceptable.

**Table 7-2: Analysis of project consistency with relevant plans and policies**

Policy	Compliance	Comments
<b>National</b>		
IRP for Electricity 2010 – 2030 (BAR Section 2.2.1)	Compliant	The project contributes toward the original IRP goal of procuring ~1 000 MW per annum from new PV facilities and increasing battery energy storage to improve the percentage of energy generated from these facilities relative to the percentage of installed capacity. The announcement in July 2022 that originally anticipated generation capacity to be procured in Bid Window 6 would be doubled indicates the need and urgency for installation of additional renewable energy in South Africa.
SIP (BAR Section 2.2.2)	Compliant	The project is compliant with SIP 8, as it relates to the industrial-scale generation of sustainable green energy and SIP 9, as it provides new energy generation capacity. M Essop of DFFE confirmed on 23 June 2022 that the project is only classified as a SIP after it has been awarded as a preferred bidder if it is part of a DMRE REIPPPP Bid.
REDZ (BAR Section 2.1.1.4)	Compliant	The project lies within the Klerksdorp REDZ identified for solar renewable energy facilities.
<b>Provincial</b>		
RES for North West Province (2012) (BAR Section 2.2.2)	Compliant	The project is compliant with the RES objective of growing renewable energy generation in the North West Province and the identification of PV as one of the most viable sources.
North West PDP (2013) (BAR Section 2.2.4)	Compliant	The project aligns with the PDP objective of growing the share renewable energy generation in the North West Province via PV facilities. Limited grid access / capacity is not a challenge at present, as the North West Province is one of the few locations that have excess grid capacity at present (see Section 3.3.2).
NWBSP (BAR Section 2.2.5)	Very limited compliance	The project overlies ESAs, which are less sensitive and more suitable to development than CBAs. However, PV farms and solar arrays are 'actively discouraged' in ESAs, while wind farms and power lines are 'not usually permitted' but 'subject to site-specific conditions and controls when unavoidable' in ESAs.
<b>Municipal</b>		
DKKDM IDP (2017) (BAR Section 2.2.5)	Limited guidance	The latest draft IDP makes very limited reference to renewable energy, but the project is consistent insofar as renewable energy is identified as a Spatial Development Value of the Province.
JB Marks LM IDP (2017) (BAR Section 2.2.7)	Limited guidance	The latest draft IDP makes very limited reference to renewable energy, but the project is consistent insofar as growing renewable energy is identified as a provincial and national goal.

## 7.2.2 Socio-Economic Need and Desirability

At a local level, the economic baseline has identified a significant need for economic growth and employment generation in the project region, arising from the closure of mines and a struggling economy in the wake of the COVID-19 pandemic and evidenced in high poverty and unemployment rates (see Section 4.2). The project could generate significant long-term investment in the local and regional economy, some employment, local development through CSI and – if implemented in line with past REIPPPP requirements – considerable community income through partial ownership in the project (if managed well). From this perspective, the project is highly desirable.

At a national level, there is a clear need to produce more power (to reduce loadshedding impacts on economic production and quality of life) and cleaner power (to reduce GHG emissions as part of a transition



to a low-carbon economy to address climate change). The project would contribute to both objectives by producing up to 150 MW of renewable energy. From this perspective, the project is also highly desirable.

The cumulative socio-economic benefit of the Stilfontein Cluster PV plants will result in a needed significant contribution towards reducing the shortfall in South African electricity generation and the massive economic costs of loadshedding. A significant and desirable cumulative benefit in terms of stimulation of economic and employment growth is expected.

### 7.2.3 Ecological Need and Desirability

It is essential that the implementation of social and economic policies take cognisance of strategic *ecological* concerns such as climate change, food security, as well as the sustainability in supply of natural resources and the status of ecosystem services. Sustainable development is the process followed to achieve the goal of sustainability (DEA, 2014).

Sustainable development implies that a project should not compromise natural systems. In this regard, the Best Practicable Environmental Option (BPEO) is that which provides the most benefit and causes the least damage to the environment as a whole, at a cost acceptable to society, in the long term as well as in the short term.

NEMA and the EIA Regulations, 2014 call for a hierarchical approach to the selection of development options, as well as impact management, which includes the investigation of alternatives to avoid, reduce (mitigate and manage) and/or remediate (rehabilitate and restore) negative (ecological) impacts (DEA, 2014).

Not surprisingly, the project has negative ecological impacts, most notably on avifauna (residual medium impact of bird displacement during construction, though operation phase impacts can be mitigated to low significance) and terrestrial ecology (residual medium impact of habitat degradation and loss for bifacial panel technology during construction, though operational phase impacts can be mitigated to very low significance). Furthermore, as noted in Section 7.2.1, the project is located in an ESA, where PV farms and, to a lesser extent, transmission lines are discouraged at a planning level. Based on site investigations, both specialists consider the project impacts acceptable.

In this context the avifauna specialist notes that human-induced climate change is recognized as a fundamental driver of biological processes and patterns. Historic climate change is known to have caused shifts in the geographic ranges of many plants and animals, and future climate change is expected to result in even greater redistributions of species (National Audubon Society, 2015).

South Africa is among the top 10 developing countries required to significantly reduce their carbon emissions (Seymore, Inglesi-Lotz, & Blignaut, 2014), and the introduction of low-carbon technologies into South Africa's power generation portfolio will greatly assist with achieving this important objective (Walwyn & Brent, 2015). Given that South Africa receives among the highest levels of solar radiation on earth (Fluri, 2009) (Munzhedi, Munzhedi, & Sebitosi, 2009), solar power generation should feature prominently in future efforts to convert to a more sustainable energy mix, also from an ecological impact perspective. However, while the expansion of solar power generation is undoubtedly a positive development in the longer term, in that it will help reduce the effect of climate change and thus habitat transformation, it must also be acknowledged that renewable energy facilities in themselves have some potential for negative ecological impacts.

The project is thus in principle ecologically desirable, and was deemed acceptable on the project site.

The cumulative impact assessment (Section 6.10.3) found that the contribution of the project to cumulative avifauna, soil capability and heritage impacts is relatively limited. However, due to the size and nature of PV projects unavoidable adverse cumulative terrestrial ecology (degradation, fragmentation and loss of habitat) and visual impacts (alteration of sense of place, visual intrusion and generation of limited glint and glare) in the region may derive from adding further habitat loss of other approved, proximate PV facilities

which will increase the cumulative loss and degradation of natural areas in the region. However, the currently envisaged cumulative impact, assessed to be of medium significance, is deemed acceptable with implementation of the relevant mitigation measures as provided in this impact assessment report.

## 7.2.4 Summary of Need and Desirability

In summary:

- The project complies with and responds directly to a number of social and economic principles and policies laid out in the planning framework by providing additional and renewable low-emission electricity to the national grid, generated in a REDZ and STC.
- The project responds well to an identified social and economic need to stimulate and provide jobs in the local economy, and to provide alternative income to communities challenged by mine closures and general economic downturn.
- The project does not fully comply with ecological planning objectives and policies contained in the NWBSP, as it is located within an ESA. Ecological impacts, while not desirable, are deemed acceptable.
- While ecological desirability is one aspect of site identification, other aspects must be satisfied to ensure that the project is (technically) sustainable. This is the case for this project:
  - Support of and approval by affected landowners;
  - Suitable terrain for the establishment of PV arrays, requiring a minimum of earthworks;
  - Sufficient available area to site the cluster of projects;
  - Good accessibility from existing roads;
  - Proximity of tie-in points to the Eskom grid; and
  - Availability of grid (transmission) capacity in the region.
- Social, economic and ecological factors are considered and assessed during the BA process, to ensure that the development is sustainable. Mitigation measures are recommended in the BAR to prevent, minimise (and optimise) impacts and to secure stakeholders' environmental rights. An EMPr has been drafted and must be implemented to ensure that potential environmental pollution and degradation can be minimised, if not prevented.
- The Project will generate impacts, both negative and positive and these should be considered in evaluating the desirability of the Project. Impacts can be managed.

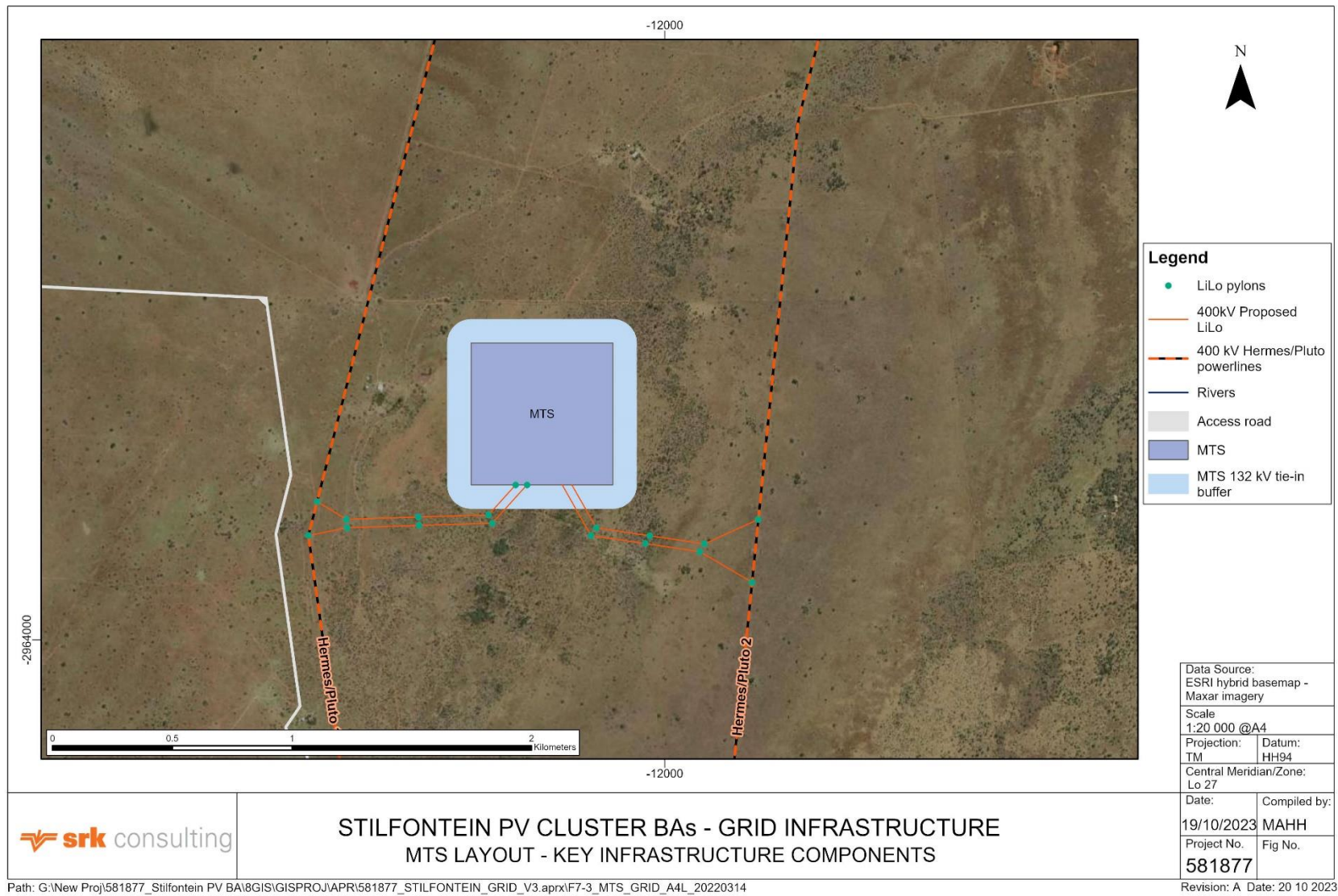
## 7.3 Recommendations

The specific recommended mitigation and optimisation measures are presented in Section 6 and the EMPr Appendix E. Implementation thereof should be a condition of the EA, if granted.

Key project-specific recommendations are listed below:

1. Implement the EMPr (including site specific mitigation) to guide construction, operation and maintenance and decommissioning activities and to provide a framework for the ongoing assessment of environmental performance;
2. Appoint an ECO to oversee the implementation of the EMPr and supervise construction activities;
3. Implement and avoid a 15 m buffer around wetlands;
4. Retain or relocate existing waterpoints to ensure at least four waterpoints are retained within the Stilfontein Project Cluster, one of which must be in the north west and one in the south east of the Cluster and two on the MTS site;

5. Restrict vegetation clearance to the immediate development footprint;
6. Limit construction of new roads as much as possible and prohibit off-road driving;
7. Demarcate potentially sensitive heritage sites and implement a chance finds procedure;
8. Design and construct an appropriate and formalised access to the site from the N12;
9. Use a single perimeter fence and space the top two wires at minimum 30 cm;
10. Use bird friendly pole designs;
11. Investigate electrocution incidents and insulate hardware if required;
12. Install and maintain Bird Flight Diverters along the length of the transmission lines according to applicable Eskom standards.
13. If the community takes partial ownership, develop a Governance Plan with clear governance rules for the Community Trust (owning shares in the project, if implemented), including trustee and beneficiary selection (if applicable);
14. If applicable, ensure regular external auditing of the Community Trust as well as supported projects (if applicable); and
15. Compile and implement management plans to guide construction, operation and decommissioning:
  - a. Rehabilitation Plan;
  - b. Alien Vegetation Management Plan;
  - c. Waste Management Plan;
  - d. Stormwater Management Plan; and
  - e. Fire Management Plan.



**Figure 7-3: MTS Grid infrastructure layout – key infrastructure components**

## 7.4 Conclusion and Authorisation Opinion

This Draft BAR has identified and assessed the potential biophysical and socio-economic impacts associated with the proposed MTS and 400 kV lines to existing Hermes Pluto 1 and 2 transmission lines, and the associated infrastructure.

In terms of Section 31 (n) of NEMA, the EAP is required to provide an opinion as to whether the activity should or should not be authorised. In this section, a qualified opinion is ventured, and in this regard SRK believes that sufficient information is available for DFFE to take a decision.

The project will result in unavoidable adverse biophysical impacts, while adverse socio-economic impacts are very low. Working on the assumption that Mainstream is committed to ensuring that the EMPr is strictly implemented, none of these adverse impacts are considered unacceptably significant. The project has significant potential socio-economic benefits however and responds to a national need for more and cleaner power generation. On this basis, the No-Go alternative is not preferred.

In conclusion, and noting that the project could become an important SIP located within a designated zone (REDZ), SRK is of the opinion that on purely 'environmental' grounds (i.e. the project's potential social, economic and biophysical implications) the application as it is currently articulated should **be approved**, provided the essential mitigation measures are implemented.

Ultimately, however, the DFFE will consider whether the project benefits outweigh the potential impacts.

## 7.5 Way Forward

This BAR is now available for public comment and SRK invites stakeholders to review the report and to participate in the public consultation process. An Executive Summary of this report has been distributed to registered stakeholders and is available from SRK on request (details below).

The report can be downloaded from [www.srk.com](http://www.srk.com) (via the "Knowledge Centre" and then "Public Documents" links). Hard copies of this report will be made available for public review at the Stilfontein Library and to authorities upon request.

Comments on the BAR can be submitted **via the online form** available at <https://forms.office.com/r/v3fsdnyhwh> or by email to Asheerah Meyer of SRK at [ameyer@srk.co.za](mailto:ameyer@srk.co.za). Alternatively, comments can be faxed or posted.

This BAR may be amended based on comments received from stakeholders. Stakeholders' comments on the BAR will assist DFFE in making a decision regarding the application. The public is therefore urged to submit comment. If you require assistance in compiling and submitting comments, please contact us and we will ensure that you receive appropriate support.

Comments must be submitted by **22 November 2023** to be incorporated into the Final BAR.

Once stakeholders have commented on the information presented in the BAR, the Final BAR will be prepared and submitted to DFFE for approval. Registered IAPs will be informed of the submission of the Final BAR and provided with the Issues and Responses Summary.

Once a decision is taken by DFFE, this decision will be communicated to registered IAPs.

## Signatures

All data used as source material plus the text, tables, figures, and attachments of this document have been reviewed and prepared in accordance with generally accepted professional engineering and environmental practices.

This report, the Stilfontein Main Transmission Substation and associated Grid Infrastructure Basic Assessment Report, was prepared and reviewed by the SRK personnel presented below.

### Prepared by

SRK Consulting - Certified Electronic Signature  
  
581877 MTS/45201/Report  
9368-4648-2035-STEY-04/10/2023  
This signature has been printed digitally. The Author has given permission for its use for this document. The details are stored in the SRK Signature Database

---

Kate Steyn

Principal Environmental Consultant

### Reviewed by

SRK Consulting - Certified Electronic Signature  
  
581877 MTS/45201/Report  
9951-6093-5915-DALC-04/10/2023  
This signature has been printed digitally. The Author has given permission for its use for this document. The details are stored in the SRK Signature Database

---

Chris Dalgliesh, Partner

Principal Environmental Consultant

## 8 References

- Akinbami, O., Oke, S., & Bodunrin, M. (2021, December). The state of renewable energy development in South Africa: An overview. *Alexandria Engineering Journal*, 60(6), 5077-5093. Retrieved from <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1110016821002295>
- Bates, M. (2012, May 1). MIT. Retrieved March 2022, from How does a battery work?: <https://engineering.mit.edu/engage/ask-an-engineer/how-does-a-battery-work/>
- Batho Earth & SED. (2020). *Proposed Kareerand Tailings Storage Facility (TSF) Expansion Project, near Stilfontein, North West Province*. Retrieved March 2022, from [https://gcs-sa.biz/wp-content/uploads/2021/03/App-D14\\_-Socio-economic-Impact-Assessment.pdf](https://gcs-sa.biz/wp-content/uploads/2021/03/App-D14_-Socio-economic-Impact-Assessment.pdf)
- Beanlands, G., & Duinker, P. (1983). *An ecological framework for environmental impact assessment in Canada*. Dalhousie University, Halifax, NS, and Federal Environmental Assessment Review Office, Hull, QC. Institute for Resource and Environmental Studies.
- Bergh, J. (1999). *Geskiedenis Atlas van Suid-Afrika. Die Vier Noordelike Provinsies*. Pretoria: J.L van Schaik.
- Beyond Heritage. (2022). *Heritage Impact Assessment for the proposed Stilfontein Solar Energy Facility and Associated Infrastructure, North West Province*.
- Business Day. (2022, May 12). Only new generation capacity will end blackouts - Eskom.
- Business Insider SA*. (2021a, March 13). Retrieved from 860 hours of load shedding: These graphs show the sorry state of SA electricity: <https://www.businessinsider.co.za/new-csir-report-load-shedding-and-eskom-2021-3>
- BusinessTech*. (2021, March 12). Retrieved from South Africa spends 10% of the year load shedding – and it could get worse: <https://businesstech.co.za/news/energy/475406/south-africa-spends-10-of-the-year-load-shedding-and-it-could-get-worse/>
- BusinessTech*. (2022, January 13). Retrieved from Expect another record year of load shedding in South Africa: economists: <https://businesstech.co.za/news/energy/550572/expect-another-record-year-of-load-shedding-in-south-africa-economists/>
- Caetano, T., & Thurlow, J. (n.d.). *The Socioeconomic Implications of Renewable Energy and Low Carbon Trajectories in South Africa*. Retrieved June 2021, from [https://www.codesria.org/IMG/pdf/1-inequality\\_climate\\_change\\_caetano\\_thurlow.pdf](https://www.codesria.org/IMG/pdf/1-inequality_climate_change_caetano_thurlow.pdf)
- Cairns, J. (2013). Environmental Stress. In S. Levin (Ed.), *Encyclopaedia of Biodiversity, second edition, Volume 7* (pp. 39-44). Waltham, MA: Academic Press.
- Canadian Environmental Protection Agency. (no date). *Reference Guide: Addressing Cumulative Environmental Effects*. Retrieved August 2007, from [www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/013/0001/0008/guide1\\_e.htm#](http://www.ceaa-acee.gc.ca/013/0001/0008/guide1_e.htm#)
- Chris van Rooyen Consulting. (2022). *Avifauna Specialist Study - PV Facility and Associated Infrastructure near Stilfontein, North-West Province*.
- City of Matlosana. (2017). *Integrated Development Plan of the City of Matlosana 2017-2022*. Retrieved February 2022, from [https://www.cogta.gov.za/cgta\\_2016/wp-content/uploads/2020/12/Matlosana-IDP-REVIEW-DOCUMENT-2020-2021-DRAFT.pdf](https://www.cogta.gov.za/cgta_2016/wp-content/uploads/2020/12/Matlosana-IDP-REVIEW-DOCUMENT-2020-2021-DRAFT.pdf)
- City of Matlosana. (2022). *TABLING OF THE 2022-2027 DRAFT INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN*. Retrieved from <http://www.matlosana.gov.za/Documents/IDP/IDP-DOCUMENT-2022-2023-DRAFT.pdf>
- CKDM. (2017). Central Karoo District Municipality Integrated Development Plan 2017-2022.
- Climate Transparency. (2020). *Climate Transparency Report 2020*. Retrieved from <https://www.climate-transparency.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/11/South-Africa-CT-2020-Web.pdf>

- Cole, W., Frazier, W., & Augustine, C. (2021). *Cost Projections for Utility-Scale Battery Storage: 2021 Update*. National Renewable Energy Laboratory. Retrieved from <https://www.nrel.gov/docs/fy21osti/79236.pdf>
- Creamer, T. (2020, 07 23). *Engineering News*. Retrieved from Renewables zones in Emalahleni and Klerksdorp part of just-transition vision – Creecy: <https://www.engineeringnews.co.za/article/renewables-zones-in-emalahleni-and-klerksdorp-part-of-just-transition-vision-creecy-2020-07-23>
- Creamer, T. (2020, December 11). *South Africa's renewables plan presents 'remarkable' industrialisation opportunity*. Retrieved from Engineering News: [https://www.engineeringnews.co.za/article/south-africas-renewables-plan-presents-remarkable-industrialisation-opportunity-2020-12-11/rep\\_id:4136](https://www.engineeringnews.co.za/article/south-africas-renewables-plan-presents-remarkable-industrialisation-opportunity-2020-12-11/rep_id:4136)
- CSIR. (2020). *Setting up for the 2020s. Addressing South Africa's electricity crisis and getting ready for the next decade*. CSIR Energy Centre. Retrieved June 2021, from [https://cisp.cachefly.net/assets/articles/attachments/81125\\_rs\\_setting\\_up\\_for\\_2020.pdf](https://cisp.cachefly.net/assets/articles/attachments/81125_rs_setting_up_for_2020.pdf)
- De Wildt Solar. (n.d.). Retrieved from <https://dewildtsolar.co.za/>
- DEA. (2017). *Public Participation guideline in terms of NEMA EIA Regulations, Department of Environmental Affairs, Pretoria, South Africa*.
- DEA. (2017a). *Guideline on Need and Desirability, Department of Environmental Affairs, Pretoria, South Africa*.
- DEA&DP. (2013). *EIA Guideline and Information Document Series*. Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning (DEA&DP).
- DEL. (2022, February 08). *Minister Thulas Nxesi announces 2022 National Minimum Wage increases*. Retrieved from Department of Employment and Labour: <https://www.gov.za/speeches/minister-thulas-nxesi-announces-2022-national-minimum-wage-increases-8-feb-2022-0000>
- DFFE. (2022). *Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment: egis*. Retrieved from [https://egis.environment.gov.za/gis\\_data\\_downloads](https://egis.environment.gov.za/gis_data_downloads)
- DFFE. (2022). Q3 2021 REEA database.
- DKKDM. (2015). *Annual Report 2015/16*. Retrieved February 2022, from [https://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/2015\\_16/DRKKDM%20FINAL%20%20201516%20ANNUAL%20REPORT.pdf](https://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/2015_16/DRKKDM%20FINAL%20%20201516%20ANNUAL%20REPORT.pdf)
- DKKDM. (2017). *Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (2017-2022)*. Retrieved from [http://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/2017\\_2022%20idp%20review%20final.pdf](http://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/2017_2022%20idp%20review%20final.pdf)
- DKKDM. (2017a). *Final Integrated Development Plan 2017/18 - 2021/22*. Retrieved February 2022, from [http://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/2017\\_2022%20idp%20review%20final.pdf](http://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/2017_2022%20idp%20review%20final.pdf)
- DKKDM. (2020a). *Profile and Analysis District Development Model*. Retrieved from <https://www.cogta.gov.za/ddm/wp-content/uploads/2020/11/DR-Kenneth-Kaunda-DM-October2020.pdf>
- DKKDM. (2020b). *Dr Kenneth Kaunda Annual Report 2020-21*. Retrieved February 2022, from <http://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/2020-21%20DrKKDM%20Annual%20Report.pdf>
- DKKDM. (2021). *Integrated Development Plan 2017-2022. 2021/22 Interim Review*. Retrieved June 2022, from <https://www.kaundadistrict.gov.za/documents/idp/2021-22%20Draft%20IDP%20REVIEW.pdf>
- DMRE. (2021). *REIPP Bid Window 5 Overview*. Retrieved March 2022, from <https://www.ipp-renewables.co.za/PressCentre/GetPressRelease?fileid=a1289fb1-0cbe-eb11-9547-2c59e59ac9cd&fileName=REIPPPP%20BW5%20Summary%20260521.pdf>
- DMRE. (2021). *REIPPP Bid Window 5 Overview*. Retrieved March 2022, from <https://www.ipp-renewables.co.za/PressCentre/GetPressRelease?fileid=a1289fb1-0cbe-eb11-9547-2c59e59ac9cd&fileName=REIPPPP%20BW5%20Summary%20260521.pdf>



- DMRE. (n.d.). *IPP Projects*. Retrieved from <https://www.ipp-projects.co.za/ProjectDatabase>
- DoE. (2019). *Integrated Resource Plan (IRP2019)*. Retrieved from <http://www.energy.gov.za/IRP/2019/IRP-2019.pdf>
- EcoMetrix Africa. (2020). *Final Report: Eskom Carbon Footprint Study 2019*. Retrieved June 2021, from <https://www.eskom.co.za/OurCompany/SustainableDevelopment/Documents/Final%20Carbon%20Footprint%20Report.pdf>
- Enelgreenpower.com*. (n.d.). Retrieved from Solar Plants: <https://www.enelgreenpower.com/learning-hub/renewable-energies/solar-energy/solar-plants>
- energysage*. (n.d.). Retrieved from Solar trackers: everything you need to know: <https://news.energysage.com/solar-trackers-everything-need-know/>
- Eskom. (2021). *TRANSMISSION GENERATION CONNECTION CAPACITY ASSESSMENT OF THE 2023 TRANSMISSION NETWORK (GCCA – 2023) Phase 1*. Reference No. : GP\_21/126. Retrieved February 2022, from [https://www.ipp-renewables.co.za/PressCentre/GetPressRelease?fileid=D96C0DFE-F5DF-EB11-954D-2C59E59AC9CD&fileName=Generation%20Connection%20Capacity%20Assessment%20\(GCCA%20-%20%202023\)%20-%20Phase%201\\_signed.pdf](https://www.ipp-renewables.co.za/PressCentre/GetPressRelease?fileid=D96C0DFE-F5DF-EB11-954D-2C59E59AC9CD&fileName=Generation%20Connection%20Capacity%20Assessment%20(GCCA%20-%20%202023)%20-%20Phase%201_signed.pdf)
- Finn, A. (2015). *A National Minimum Wage in the Context of the South African Labour Market. National Minimum Wage Research Initiative, Working Paper Series No. 1, University of the Witwatersrand*. Retrieved from <https://www.dropbox.com/s/r9pit4odz4kzpej/NMW-RI%20Descriptive%20Statistics%20Final.pdf?dl=0>
- Fluri, T. P. (2009). The potential of concentrating solar power in South Africa. *Energy Policy*, 37, pp. 5075-5080.
- Go Solar*. (2021, November 10). Retrieved from Monofacial versus Bifacial Monocrystalline Panels: <https://gosolargroup.com/panels/monofacial-vs-bifacial-monocrystalline-modules/>
- Iberdrola*. (2022). Retrieved from How do photovoltaic plants work?: <https://www.iberdrola.com/sustainability/what-is-photovoltaic-energy>
- IEEEExplore*. (n.d.). Retrieved from Maintenance of EVH substations: <https://ieeexplore.ieee.org/document/7955819>
- Intellidex. (2021). *Communities in Transition: the Role of Community Ownership in South Africa's REIPPP Programme*. Retrieved from <https://www.intellidex.co.za/reports/communities-in-transition-report/#:~:text=Intellidex%20has%20conducted%20a%20research,research%20was%20funded%20by%20FirstRand.>
- IRENA. (2014). *The Socio-economic Benefits of Solar and Wind Energy*. Retrieved June 2021, from <https://www.irena.org/publications/2014/May/The-Socio-economic-Benefits-of-Solar-and-Wind-Energy>
- IRENA. (2019). *Measuring the socio-economic footprint of the Energy Transition: The Role of Supply Chains*. Retrieved June 2021, from [https://www.irena.org/-/media/Files/IRENA/Agency/Publication/2019/Jan/IRENA\\_-\\_Measuring\\_socio-economic\\_footprint\\_2019\\_summary.pdf?la=en&hash=98F94BCC01598931E91BF49A47969B97ABD374B5](https://www.irena.org/-/media/Files/IRENA/Agency/Publication/2019/Jan/IRENA_-_Measuring_socio-economic_footprint_2019_summary.pdf?la=en&hash=98F94BCC01598931E91BF49A47969B97ABD374B5)
- IRENA*. (2020). Retrieved from Avoided Emissions Calculator: <https://www.irena.org/climatechange/Avoided-Emissions-Calculator>
- i-traffic*. (2022, 06). Retrieved from <https://www.i-traffic.co.za/region/Gauteng>
- JB Marks LM. (2020). *JB MARKS LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 2017-2022 FINAL INTEGRATED PLAN AMENDED 2020-2021*. Retrieved from <https://www.jbmarks.co.za/download/integrated-development-plan-2020-2021/?wpdmdl=14027&refresh=629a10c9527db1654264009>

- JB Marks LM. (2022). *DRAFT INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP) 2022-2023*. Retrieved from <https://www.jbmarks.co.za/download/draft-idp-2022-2023/?wpdmdl=14031&refresh=629a10c6b36aa1654264006>
- KMA. (2016). *Klondike Solar PV Power Plan - Traffic Impact Assessment*. Retrieved from <https://sahris.sahra.org.za/sites/default/files/additionaldocs/Appendix%20E10%20Traffic%20Assessment%20and%20Transport%20Plan.pdf>
- Maggs, T. (1976). *Iron Age Communities of the Southern Highveld*. Pietermaritzburg: Natal Museum.
- Mantashe, G. (2021, October 28). ANNOUNCEMENT BY THE MINISTER OF MINERAL RESOURCES AND ENERGY, THE HONOURABLE GWEDE MANTASHE, 28 October 2021, RENEWABLE ENERGY IPP PROCUREMENT PROGRAMME (REIPPPP) BID WINDOW 5, ANNOUNCEMENT OF PREFERRED BIDDERS. Retrieved March 2022, from <https://www.ipp-renewables.co.za/PressCentre/GetPressRelease?fileid=1b9b12ad-a038-ec11-9556-2c59e59ac9cd&fileName=REIPPPP-Announcement-by-Minister-28102021%20%281%29.pdf>
- Maskam Water. (n.d.). Retrieved from Clarus Fusion Treatment System: <http://www.maskamwater.com/products/clarus-fusion-series-treatment-systems/>
- Mason, R. (1962). *The Prehistory of the Transvaal*. Witwatersrand University Press, Johannesburg. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press.
- McFadden, C. (2021, February 05). *Interesting Engineering*. Retrieved from How Does a Solar Power Plant Work?: <https://interestingengineering.com/how-does-a-solar-power-plant-work>
- Meridian Economics. (2020). *Accelerating renewable energy industrialisation in South Africa: What's stopping us? Final Report*. Retrieved June 2021, from <https://meridianeconomics.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2020/07/Accelerating-renewable-energy-industrialisation-in-South-Africa-July2020.pdf>
- Mucina, L., & Rutherford, M. C. (Eds.). (2006). *The vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland*. Pretoria, South Africa: Strelizia 19. South African Biodiversity Institute.
- Municipalities of South Africa. (2022a, March). *Municipalities of South Africa*. Retrieved from City of Matlosana Local Municipality (NW403): <https://municipalities.co.za/demographic/1193/city-of-matlosana-local-municipality>
- Municipalities of South Africa*. (2022b, March). Retrieved from Municipalities: [www.localgovernment.co.za](http://www.localgovernment.co.za)
- Munzhedi, Munzhedi, R., & Sebitosi, A. (2009). Re-drawing the solar map of South Africa for photovoltaic applications. *Renewable Energy*, 34, pp. 165-169.
- National Audubon Society. (2015). *Audubon's Birds and Climate Change Report: A Primer for Practitioners*. National Audubon Society, New York. Contributors: Gary Langham, Justin Schuetz, Candan Soykan, Chad Wilsey, Tom Auer, Geoff LeBaron, Connie Sanchez, Trish Distler. Version 1.3.
- National Treasury. (2016). *Budget Review 2016*. Retrieved from <http://www.treasury.gov.za/documents/national%20budget/2016/review/FullReview.pdf>
- Nomjana, L. (2020, February 18). *FutureGrowth*. Retrieved from REIPPPP comes of age: <https://futuregrowth.co.za/insights/reipp-comes-of-age/>
- North West 405 Municipality. (2017). *NW 405 MUNICIPALITY INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN 2017-2020*. Retrieved from <https://www.jbmarks.co.za/download/integrated-development-plan-2017-2020/?wpdmdl=14024&refresh=629a10ef15bc91654264047>
- North West Department of Health. (2022). *Covid-19 Statistics in the North West*. Retrieved February 2022, from <https://twitter.com/NorthWestDOH/status/1498214590953541634/photo/1>
- NWDC. (2016). *Economic Data Report 1st Quarter 2015/16*. Retrieved February 2022, from [https://nwdc.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2015/07/NWDC\\_Economic\\_Data\\_Report\\_Qtr\\_1\\_201516.pdf](https://nwdc.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2015/07/NWDC_Economic_Data_Report_Qtr_1_201516.pdf)

- NWDC. (2021a). *Economic Data Report Quarter 3 of 2021/2022*. Retrieved February 2022, from [https://nwdc.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2022/01/NWDC\\_Economic\\_Data\\_Report\\_Qtr\\_3\\_2021-2022.pdf](https://nwdc.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2022/01/NWDC_Economic_Data_Report_Qtr_3_2021-2022.pdf)
- NWDC. (2021b). *Economic Data Report Quarter 2 of 2021/22*. Retrieved February 2022, from [https://nwdc.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2021/10/NWDC\\_Economic\\_Data\\_Report\\_Qtr\\_2\\_2021.2022.pdf](https://nwdc.co.za/wp-content/uploads/2021/10/NWDC_Economic_Data_Report_Qtr_2_2021.2022.pdf)
- NWP. (2013). *Provincial Development Plan*. Retrieved February 2022, from <http://www.nwpg.gov.za/Documents/Provincial%20Development%20Plan.pdf>
- Our World in Data*. (n.d.). Retrieved from South Africa: CO2 Country Profile: <https://ourworldindata.org/co2/country/south-africa>
- PERO. (2018). *Provincial Economic Review and Outlook*. City of Cape Town : Western Cape Government Provincial Treasury.
- Pickerel, K. (2018, April 2). *Solar Power World*. Retrieved from What are bifacial solar modules?: <https://www.solarpowerworldonline.com/2018/04/what-are-bifacial-solar-modules/#:~:text=Bifacial%20modules%20produce%20solar%20power,backside%20of%20the%20solar%20cells.>
- Platte River Power Authority. (2017). *Battery Energy Storage Technology Assessment*. Retrieved March 2022, from <https://www.prpa.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/10/HDR-Battery-Energy-Storage-Assessment.pdf>
- PVeducation.com*. (n.d.). Retrieved March 2022, from Working Safety with Photovoltaic Systems: <https://pveducation.com/working-safely/>
- READ. (2015). *North West Biodiversity Sector Plan*. Mahikeng: North West Provincial Government. Retrieved June 2022
- SA Cities Network. (2014). *Matlosana - City on the Move?* Retrieved February 2022, from <https://www.sacities.net/wp-content/uploads/2019/12/City-of-Matlosana-final-author-tc.pdf>
- SAWEA. (2019). *The Cost Benefits of Renewable Energy*. Retrieved June 2021, from [https://sawea.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2019/02/RE-Costs\\_SAWEA2019.pdf](https://sawea.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2019/02/RE-Costs_SAWEA2019.pdf)
- Seymore, R., Inglesi-Lotz, R., & Blignaut, J. (2014). A greenhouse gas emissions inventory for South Africa: a comparative analysis. *Renewable & Sustainable Energy Reviews*, 34, pp. 371-379.
- SolarReviews*. (2022, 03 15). Retrieved from What is a solar tracker and is it worth the investment?: <https://www.solarreviews.com/blog/are-solar-axis-trackers-worth-the-additional-investment>
- South African Government. (n.d.). *National Infrastructure Plan*. Retrieved from <https://www.gov.za/issues/national-infrastructure-plan#E-SIPs>
- South African Government News Agency*. (2019, February 24). Retrieved from Renewable energy programme attracts R209.4 billion to SA economy: <https://www.sanews.gov.za/south-africa/renewable-energy-programme-attracts-r2094-billion-sa-economy>
- SRK. (2022). *Social Impact Assessment for the Ingwe Renewable Energy Project*. SRK Report 582222/1.
- SRK Consulting. (2022a). *Visual Impact Assessment for the Project within the Stilfontein PV Cluster, Stilfontein, North West Province*.
- Stilfontein Climate Weather Averages*. (2022, June 7). Retrieved 2022, from World Weather Online: <https://www.worldweatheronline.com/stilfontein-weather-averages/north-west/za.aspx>
- Techso. (2017). *Traffic Impact Assessment for the Proposed Constuction of the Orkney Solar Farm and associated infrastructure on the Remaining Extent of Portion 7 and Portion 21 of the farm Wolvehuis 114, North West Province*. Retrieved June 2022, from

<https://sahris.sahra.org.za/sites/default/files/additionaldocs/Appendix%20G%20-%20Traffic%20Impact%20Assessment%20Report.pdf>

- The Biodiversity Company. (2022a). *Pedology Baseline & Impact Assessment for the Proposed Mainstream Stilfontein Solar Project*.
- The Biodiversity Company. (2022b). *Wetland Baseline & Impact Assessment for the Proposed Mainstream Stilfontein Solar Projects*.
- The Biodiversity Company. (2022c). *The Terrestrial Biodiversity Baseline and Impact Assessment for the Mainstream Stilfontein Solar Project*.
- TIPS. (2020). *A case for renewable energy in South Africa's post-lockdown economic recovery stimulus package*. Trade & Industrial Policy Strategies.
- Tregenna, F. (2010). *Sectoral Labour-Intensity in South Africa*. Retrieved from [http://new.nedlac.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2014/10/labour\\_intensity\\_report\\_2010.pdf](http://new.nedlac.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2014/10/labour_intensity_report_2010.pdf)
- van der Walt, J. (2019, September 30). *Wind farms: a massive opportunity for SA's farmers*. Retrieved from farmer's weekly: <https://www.farmersweekly.co.za/farm-basics/how-to-business/wind-farms-a-massive-opportunity-for-sas-farmers/>
- van der Walt, J. (2022a). *Heritage Impact Assessment of the Roan 1 PV Development, North West Province*.
- van der Walt, J. (2022b). *Heritage Impact Assessment of the Roan 2 PV Development, North West Province*.
- van der Walt, J. (2022c). *Heritage Impact Assessment for the proposed Doornhoek 1 PV Facility and Associated Infrastructure, Klerksdorp, North West Province*.
- van der Walt, J. (2022d). *Heritage Impact Assessment for the proposed Doornhoek 2 PV Facility and Associated Infrastructure, Klerksdorp, North West Province*.
- Vanclay, F. (2003). *International Principles for Social Impact Assessment. Impact Assessment Project Appraisal for IAIA*. Retrieved from <http://www.iaia.org/publicdocuments/sections/sia/IAIA-SIA-International-Principles.pdf>.
- Visser, E., Perold, V., Ralston-Paton, S., Cardenal, A., & Ryan, P. (2019). Assessing the impacts of a utility-scale photovoltaic solar energy facility on birds in the Northern Cape, South Africa. *Renewable Energy*, pp. 1285 – 1294. Retrieved from <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.renene.2018.08.106>
- Walwyn, D., & Brent, A. (2015). Renewable energy gathers steam in South Africa. *Renewable and Sustainable Energy*, 41, pp. 390-401.
- WASA. (2020). WASA High-resolution Wind Resource Map 2020. Retrieved from [http://www.wasaproject.info/docs/WASA\\_3\\_Resource\\_Map\\_March\\_2021.png](http://www.wasaproject.info/docs/WASA_3_Resource_Map_March_2021.png)
- Waterloo Solar. (n.d.). Retrieved from <https://waterloosolar.co.za/community/#more-12>
- Wazimap. (2022a, March). *Dr Kenneth Kaunda based on Community Survey 2016*. Retrieved from Wazimap: <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/district-DC40-dr-kenneth-kaunda/>
- Wazimap. (2022b, March). *City of Matlosana based on Community Survey 2016*. Retrieved from Wazimap: <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/municipality-NW403-city-of-matlosana/?release=2016#elections>
- Wazimap. (2022c, March). *Ventersdorp/ Tlokwe based on Community Survey 2016*. Retrieved from Wazimap: <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/municipality-NW405-ventersdorptlokwe/#demographics>
- Wazimap. (2022e, March). *Ventersdorp/ Tlokwe, North West based on Survey 2011*. Retrieved from Wazimap: <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/municipality-NW405-ventersdorptlokwe/?release=2011#education>
- Wazimap. (2022f, March). *City of Matlosana Ward 18 (64003018)*. Retrieved from Wazimap: <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/ward-64003018-city-of-matlosana-ward-18-64003018/>

- Wazimap. (2022g, March). *City of Matlosana, North West based on 2011 data*. Retrieved from Wazimap: <https://wazimap.co.za/profiles/municipality-NW403-city-of-matlosana/?release=2011>
- WCG. (2020). *Provincial Economic Review and Outlook 2020*. Retrieved November 2020, from <https://www.westerncape.gov.za/provincial-treasury/files/atoms/files/2020%20PERO%20Publication.pdf>
- WeatherSpark. (2022). *Climate and Average Weather Year Round in Stilfontein*. Retrieved June 2022, from WeatherSpark: <https://weatherspark.com/y/92859/Average-Weather-in-Stilfontein-South-Africa-Year-Round#Figures-WindDirection>
- Wells, L. (1933). A report on the stone structures of the Platberg near Klerksdorp. *South African Journal of Science*, 30, 582-584.
- Western Cape Provincial Treasury. (2020b). *Municipal Economic Review and Outlook 2020*. Retrieved May 2021, from [https://www.westerncape.gov.za/provincial-treasury/files/atoms/files/Mero%202020%20final\\_compressed.pdf](https://www.westerncape.gov.za/provincial-treasury/files/atoms/files/Mero%202020%20final_compressed.pdf)
- White, D. (1977). The Excavation of an Iron Age Site at Palmietfontein near Klerksdorp. *The South African Archaeological Bulletin*, 32(125), 89-92.
- Wikipedia. (2021, November 17). Retrieved March 2022, from Stilfontein: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stilfontein>
- Wikipedia. (2021a, November 27). Retrieved March 2022, from Potchefstroom: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Potchefstroom>
- Wikipedia. (2021b, October 31). Retrieved March 2022, from Electrical Substation: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Electrical\\_substation](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Electrical_substation)
- Wikipedia. (2021c, December 29). Retrieved March 2022, from Photovoltaic power station: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Photovoltaic\\_power\\_station](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Photovoltaic_power_station)
- Wikipedia. (2022, February 01). Retrieved March 2022, from Highveld: <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Highveld>
- Wolf, S. (2021, October 13). *Paradise Energy Solutions*. Retrieved from What are Bifacial Solar Panels: <https://www.paradis solarenergy.com/blog/what-are-bifacial-solar-panels>
- WWF. (2015). *A review of the local community development requirements in South Africa's renewable energy procurement programme*. Retrieved May 2021, from [https://wwfafrica.awsassets.panda.org/downloads/local\\_community\\_development\\_report\\_20150618.pdf?14322/A-review-of-the-local-community-development-requirements-in-South-Africas-renewable-energy-procurement-programme](https://wwfafrica.awsassets.panda.org/downloads/local_community_development_report_20150618.pdf?14322/A-review-of-the-local-community-development-requirements-in-South-Africas-renewable-energy-procurement-programme)

---

**Appendix A      EAP Declaration**

---

**Appendix B      Curriculum Vitae of the EAP(s)**

---

## **Appendix C     Stakeholder Engagement**



---

## **Appendix C.1 Stakeholder Database**

---

## **Appendix C.2 Site Notice and Proof of Placement**

---

**Appendix C.3 Newspaper Advert and Proof of Placement**

---

## **Appendix C.4 Proof of Letter Drop**

---

**Appendix C.5 Notification Letter and Proof of Stakeholder Notification**

---

## **Appendix C.6 Issues and Responses Summary**

---

**Appendix D      Specialist Studies**

---

## **Appendix D.1 Freshwater Specialist Study**



---

## **Appendix D.2 Terrestrial Ecology Specialist Study**

---

## **Appendix D.3 Avifauna Specialist Study**

---

**Appendix D.4 Soil and Land Capability Specialist Study**

---

## **Appendix D.5 Socio-Economic Specialist Study**

---

## **Appendix D.6 Heritage Specialist Study**

---

## **Appendix D.7 Visual Specialist Study**

---

## **Appendix E    EMPrs**

---

**Appendix E.1    Generic EMPr for the Development  
and Expansion of Substation  
Infrastructure for Transmission and  
Distribution of Electricity**



---

**Appendix E.2    Generic EMPr for the Development  
and Expansion of Overhead Electricity  
Transmission and Distribution  
Infrastructure**

---

**Appendix F      Site Sensitivity Verification Report**



